

Agenda Including Addeds

Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee

The 7th Meeting of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee

October 21, 2021, 5:00 PM

2021 Meeting - Virtual Meeting during the COVID-19 Emergency

Please check the City website for current details of COVID-19 service impacts.

Meetings can be viewed via live-streaming on YouTube and the City website

The City of London is committed to making every effort to provide alternate formats and communication supports for Council, Standing or Advisory Committee meetings and information, upon request. To make a request related to this meeting, please contact advisorycommittee@london.ca

	Pages
1. Call to Order	
1.1. Disclosures of Pecuniary Interest	
2. Scheduled Items	
2.1. 5:00 PM Marcy McKillop, Environmental Services Engineer and Kyle Murray, Environmental Services Engineer re Wastewater Treatment Operations Plan and Wastewater Treatment Operations Projects	2
- Adelaide Wastewater Treatment Plant Climate Change Resiliency Class Environmental Assessment	
- Greenway Wastewater Treatment Plant Climate Change Resiliency Class Environmental Assessment	
- Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan	
- Biosolids Management Master Plan	
a. <i>(ADDED) Staff Presentation</i>	5
3. Consent	
3.1. 6th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee	24
3.2. Dingman Creek Stage 2 Lands Environmental Assessment - Notice of Study Initiation	26
3.3. Notice of Planning Application - 179 Meadowlily Road South	28
3.4. Notice of Public Participation Meeting - Encouraging the Growth of Food In Urban Areas	33
4. Items for Discussion	
4.1. Environmental Management Guidelines	37
4.2. <i>(ADDED) Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Inventory Working Group Comments</i>	185
5. Adjournment	

Notice of Public Information Centre No. 2 Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan

Please find attached a copy of the notice for the second (and final) Public Information Centre for the subject Master Plan.

The City of London operates five wastewater treatment plants and 36 pumping stations. This Master Plan looks at the need for new and upgraded wastewater facilities to develop an informed long-term plan for this infrastructure.

Project information is available on the City [Get Involved website](#), including details of the virtual Public Information Centre No. 2 to be held on Wednesday, September 29 at 5 pm. A recorded video presentation will be made available following the PIC on the [Get Involved website](#).

The Notice of Public Information Centre No. 2 is being emailed to agencies, stakeholders and Indigenous Communities. This notice will also appear in [the Londoner](#) on September 16, and September 23, 2021.

By copy of this information to the Clerk's Office, I would request that this notice be circulated to other elected officials, as appropriate.

Regards,



Marcy McKillop, P.Eng.
Environmental Services Engineer
Wastewater Treatment Operations
City of London

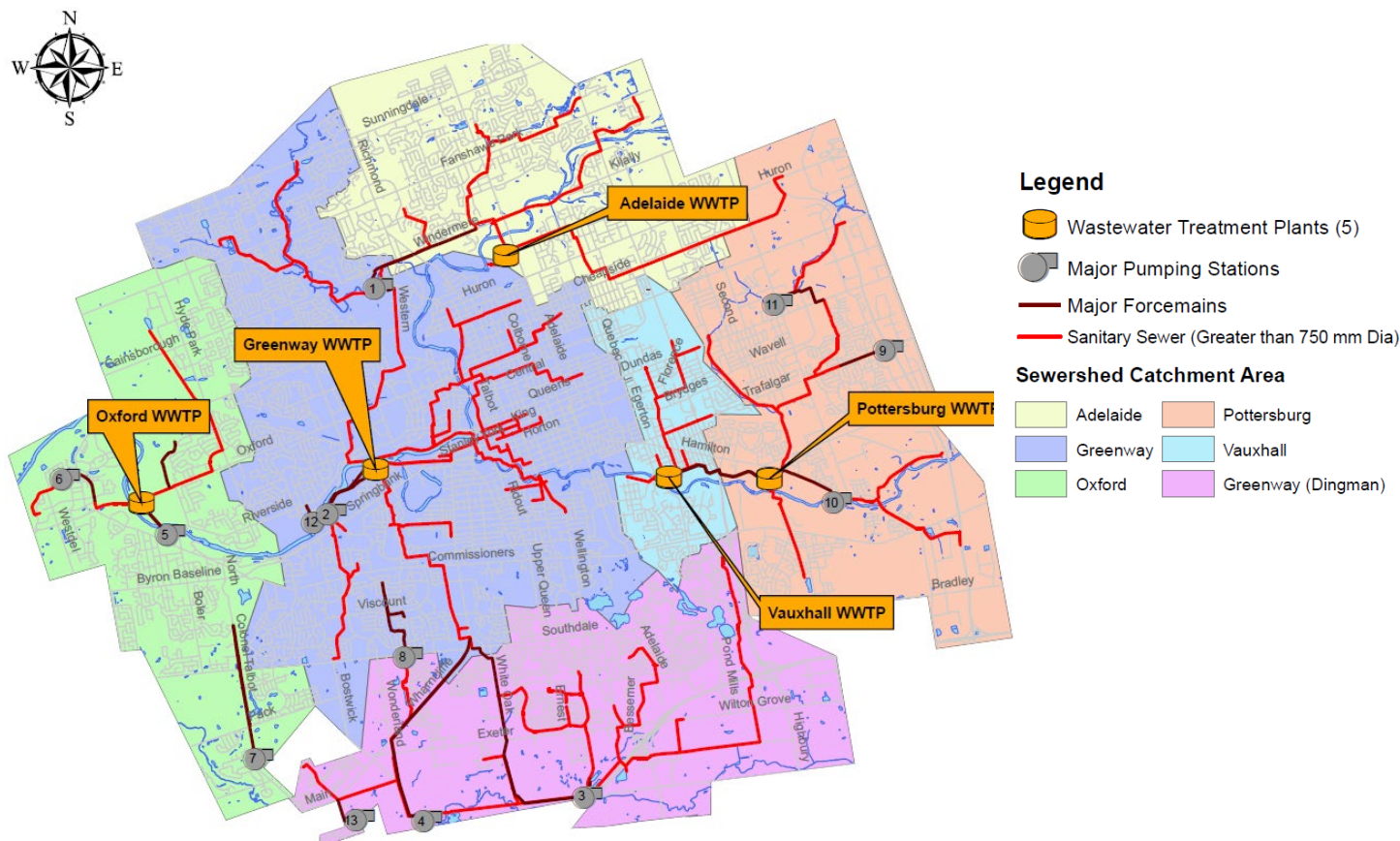
109 Greenside Avenue
London, ON N6J 2X5
P: 519.661.CITY(2489) x 4976 | Cell: 226.688.8176 | Fax: 519.661.0199
mmckillop@london.ca | www.london.ca

As part of our ongoing efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19, the City of London has made changes to many City services. Visit our [website for the latest information about City services and COVID-19](#).

Notice of Public Information Centre No. 2: Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan

Date: September 16, 2021

The City of London operates five wastewater treatment plants and 36 pumping stations to collect and treat London's wastewater. This study looks at the need for new and upgraded facilities as part of our commitment to protecting the environment and ensuring that our facilities can continue to serve London as it grows.



Study area:

This Master Plan needs to consider the entire city. We are seeking input from everyone who wants their voice heard.

Background

The proper collection and treatment of wastewater has a direct impact of the health of residents, our environment, and the ability of the City to grow and prosper. Operating a wastewater treatment system often requires the upgrade of existing facilities and the construction of new infrastructure. By developing an informed, long-term plan, the City will ensure that the improvements we make today will effectively contribute to our long-term goals.

Public Information Centre – event details

A second virtual Public Information Centre will be held on Wednesday, September 29 at 5:00 p.m. to present some of the key opportunities, challenges, constraints and strategies of this Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan. The link to register for the online event will be available at the project's [Get Involved page](#), along with a recorded presentation video following the event.

Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan project page:

For the most up-to-date information, including project updates, please visit the [Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan project page](#).

Your input is important

The City wants to hear from you. This Master Plan would not be complete if it does not consider the needs of all of the City's residents and neighbours. If you would like to ask a question, make a comment or add your name to the contact list, please visit the project's [Get Involved page](#) or contact the City Project Manager:

Name: Marcy McKillop, P.Eng.
Organization: City of London, Environmental & Engineering Services
Phone: (519) 661-2489 ext. 4976
Email: mmckillop@london.ca

This document is available in accessible formats, including electronic formats, large-print formats, and/or audio formats. Please contact the City Project Manager to submit your request.

Municipal Class Environmental Assessment Process:

This study is being undertaken in accordance with the Municipal Class Environmental Assessment process (MEA, 2000 as amended in 2007, 2011, and 2015). For details on this process, please refer to the [Municipal Class Environment Assessment website](#) or contact the City Project Manager listed above.

Thank you in advance for your participation and contribution to the planning process that will impact your life in the City of London in a meaningful way. We look forward to working with you towards building a more sustainable and environmentally responsible city.

Sincerely,



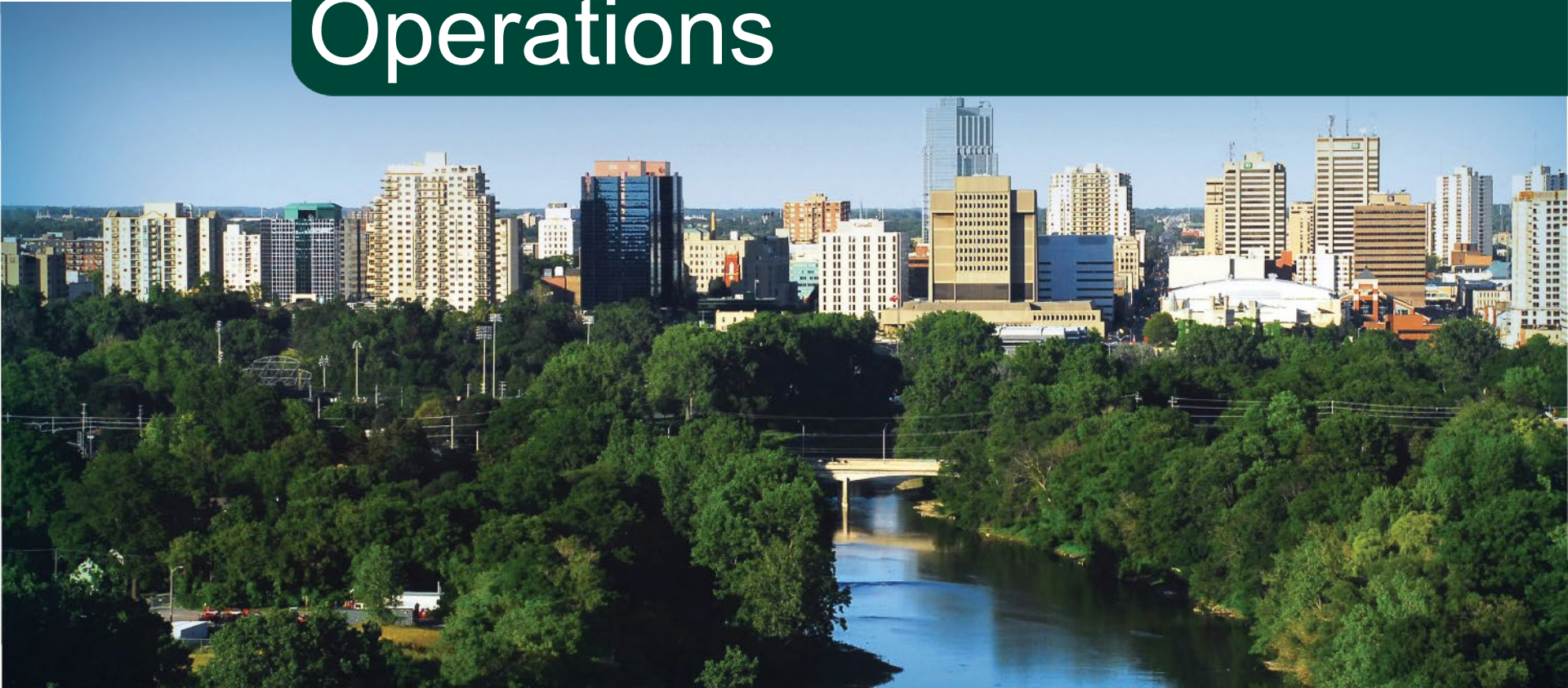
Marcy McKillop, P.Eng.
Environmental Services Engineer, Wastewater Treatment Operations Division

Copied: Kelly Scherr, Deputy City Manager, Environment and Infrastructure; Scott Mathers, Director Water, Wastewater and Stormwater; all City Councillors

Please note that comments received will be maintained for reference throughout the project and will become part of the public record. Under the Municipal Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act and the Environmental Assessment Act, any personal information such as name, address, and telephone number included in a submission will become part of the public record unless the comments specifically requests that such personal details not be included in the public record.



Wastewater Treatment Operations



Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee
October 21, 2021

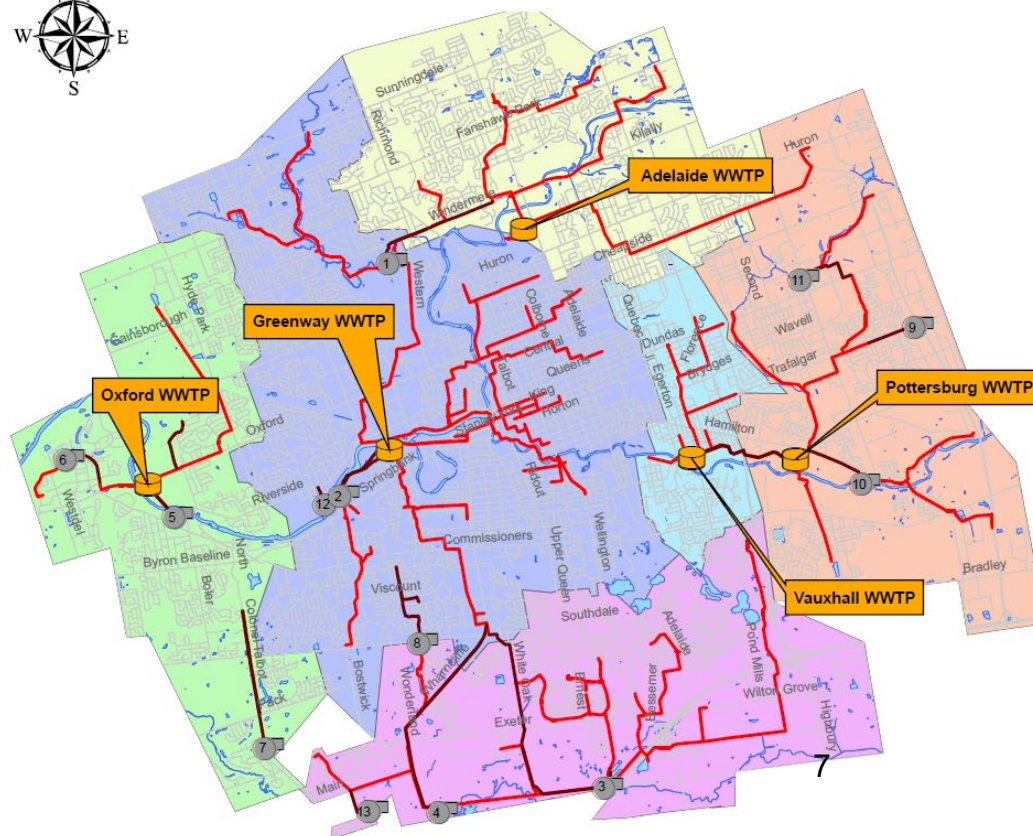
Projects

- Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan
- Greenway Wastewater Treatment Plant Climate Change Resiliency Class Environmental Assessment
- Adelaide Wastewater Treatment Plant Climate Change Resiliency Class Environmental Assessment
- Biosolids Management Master Plan







Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan

to develop an informed, long-term plan for our wastewater infrastructure to address growth servicing, environmental protection and asset management



Legend

-  Wastewater Treatment Plants (5)
-  Major Pumping Stations
-  Major Force mains
-  Sanitary Sewer (Greater than 750 mm Dia)

Sewershed Catchment Area

- | | |
|--|--|
|  Adelaide |  Pottersburg |
|  Greenway |  Vauxhall |
|  Oxford |  Greenway (Dingman) |

[getinvolved.london.ca/
wastewater-master-
plan](http://getinvolved.london.ca/wastewater-master-plan)

Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan cont'd

Do Nothing

Limit Growth

New Wastewater Treatment Plant(s) at new locations

Optimize, upgrade and/or expand existing system

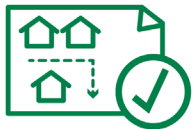
Inflow and Infiltration reduction

Peak flow management

Servicing Strategy Alternatives

A combination of managing flows and building on our existing systems

Evaluation Criteria for Servicing Strategy Alternatives



Technical
Can it be implemented/constructed?



Environmental
Is it environmentally sustainable?



Financial
Is it financially sustainable?



Jurisdictional/Regulatory
Can it easily adapt to changing regulations?



Social/Cultural
How does it impact local communities?

Recommended servicing solution/strategy

Short-listed Alternatives:

- Optimize, expand and/or upgrade existing system
 - Wastewater Treatment Plants
 - Strategy A: East London Sanitary Servicing
 - Strategy B: Plant upgrade or expansion
 - Strategy C: Plant re-rating
 - Wastewater Pumping Stations
 - Strategy D: Expand and/or enhance flexibility
 - Strategy E: Upgrade/improve operation
 - Strategy F: Decommission
- Inflow and Infiltration Reduction
- Peak Flow Management



Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan cont'd

Recommended Implementation Plan

Wastewater Treatment Plant Projects		Capital Cost	Class EA Schedule
Short-Term (1-3 years)	A1 - Interconnection of Pottersburg and Vauxhall plants B2 - Vauxhall plant upgrade (flow equalization, Section 1 concrete repairs, and replacement of secondary clarifier mechanisms and disinfection system) C1 - Vauxhall plant re-rating and Pottersburg plant de-rating	\$ 16 M	B <i>Completed</i> A A
	B1 - Adelaide plant upgrade: - primary and secondary clarifier mechanism replacement, return/waste sludge pumping, and aeration system upgrade - Flood berm/barrier and effluent pumping station	\$ 17 M	A B- <i>in progress</i>
	B3 - Greenway plant upgrade: - Disinfection system replacement and sludge thickening improvements - Flood berm/barrier and effluent pumping station	\$ 40 M	A B – <i>in progress</i>
	C2 - Greenway plant re-rating (Section 3)		A
Medium-Term (4-10 years)	B4 - Oxford plant upgrade	\$ 3 M	A
Long-Term (10-20 years)	B5 - Adelaide plant expansion	\$ 60 M	C
	B6 – Oxford plant expansion	\$ 11 M	C
	B7 - Greenway plant expansion	\$330 M	C
	A2 - New/expanded Pottersburg plant	\$330 M	C

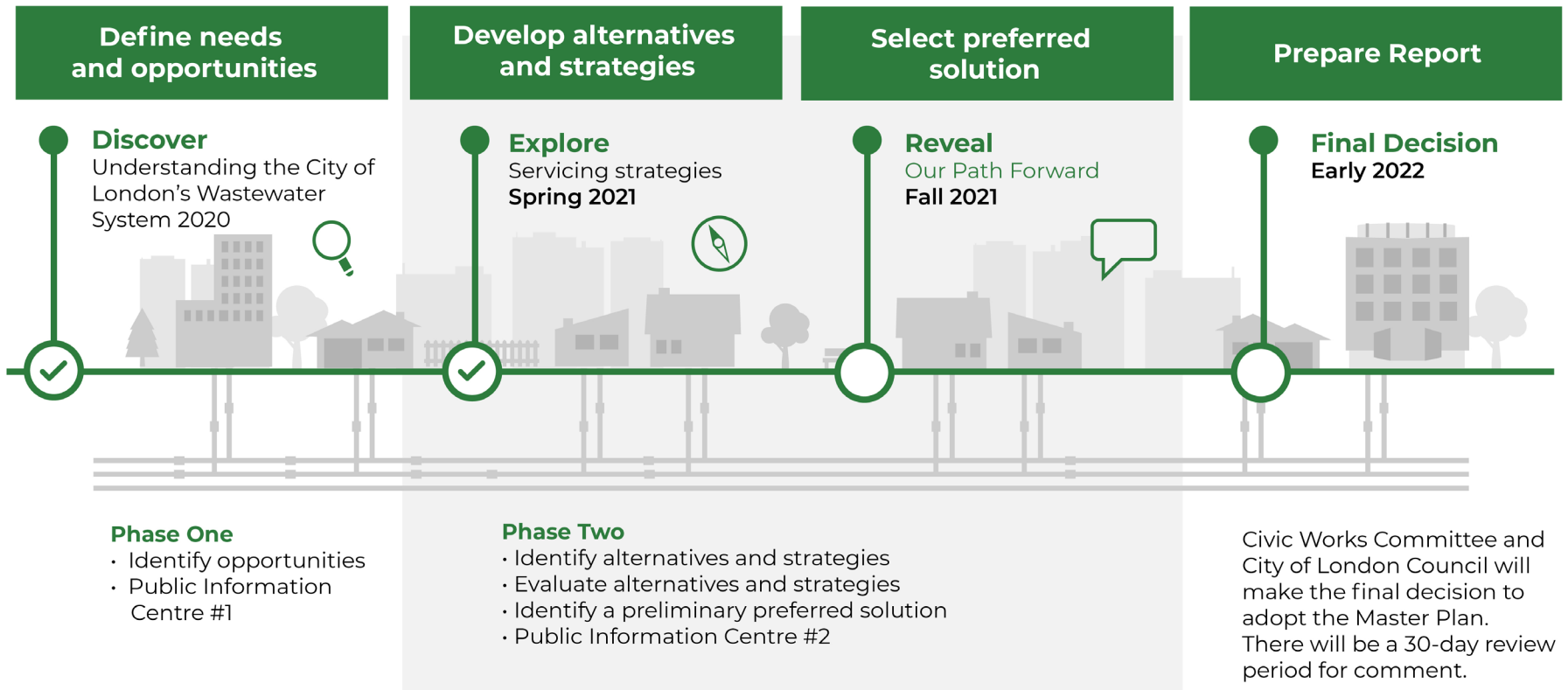


Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan cont'd

Recommended Implementation Plan

Wastewater Pumping Station Projects		Capital Cost	Class EA Schedule
Short-Term (1-3 years)	D1 – Dingman Pumping Station Expansion	\$ 21 M	B <i>Completed</i>
	E1 – Victoria Street Pumping Station Replacement	\$ 0.8M	B <i>Completed</i>
	D2 – East Park Pumping Station Expansion	\$ 4 M	B <i>Completed</i>
	D3 – Byron Pumping Station Expansion	\$ 4 M	A+
	E2 – Broughdale Pumping Station Upgrade	\$ 2 M	A+
	F1 – Paardeberg Pumping Station Decommissioning	\$ 0.1M	A+
Medium-Term (4-10 years)	D4 – Westmount Pumping Station Enhancements	\$ 0.5M	A+
	D5 – Berkshire Pumping Station Enhancements	\$2–5 M	B
	E3 – Colonel Talbot Pumping Station Upgrade	\$ 0.5M	A+

Wastewater Treatment Operations Master Plan cont'd



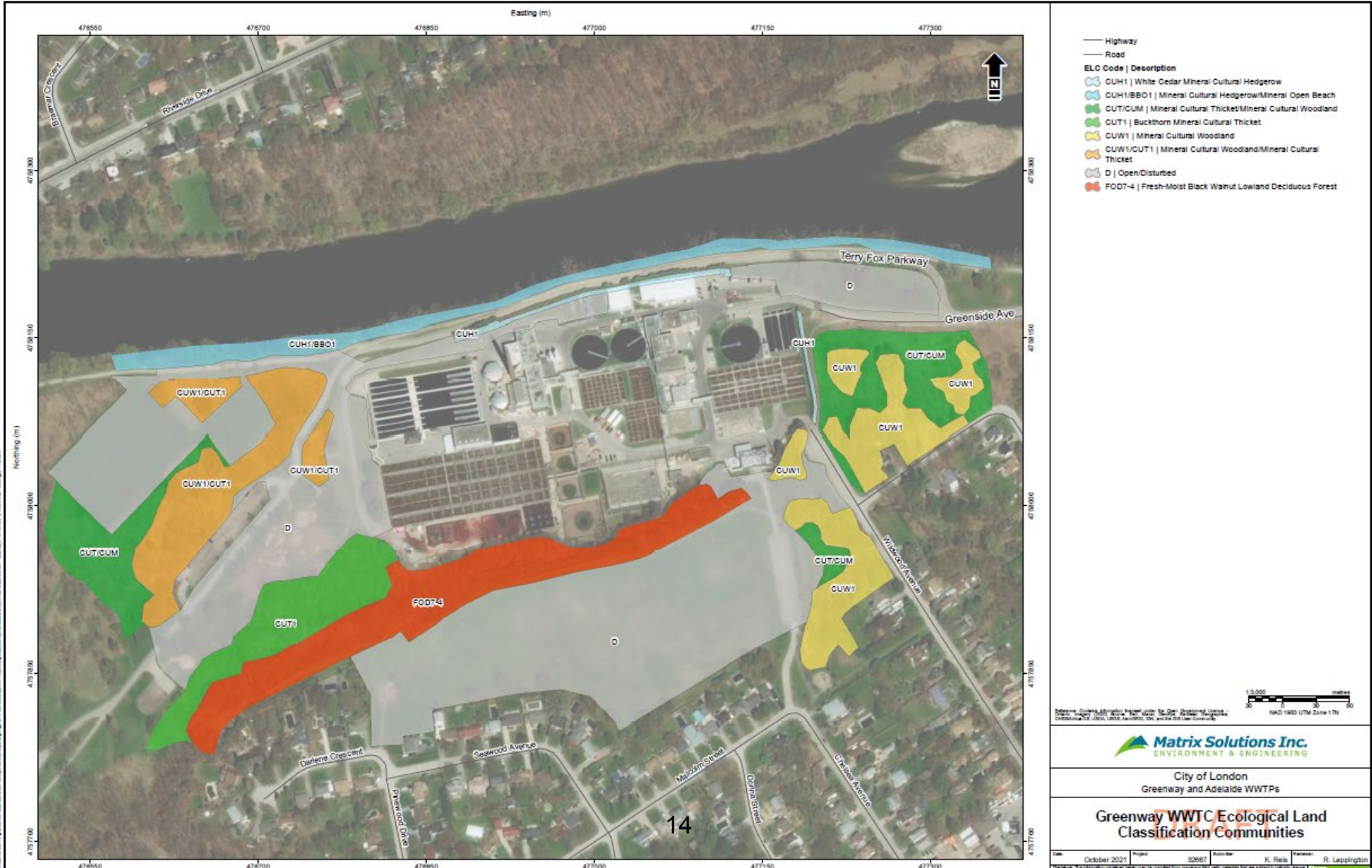
Greenway WWTP Climate Change Resiliency Class EA

- Federal funding secured through the Disaster Mitigation and Adaption Fund
- Class EA to identify preferred flood protection measures for the Greenway WWTP to:
 - improve asset resilience
 - enhance treatment capabilities and safety of plant staff during extreme weather





Greenway WWTP Climate Change Resiliency Class EA cont'd



Matrix Solutions Inc.
ENVIRONMENT & ENGINEERING

City of London
Greenway and Adelaide WWTPs

Greenway WWTP Ecological Land Classification Communities

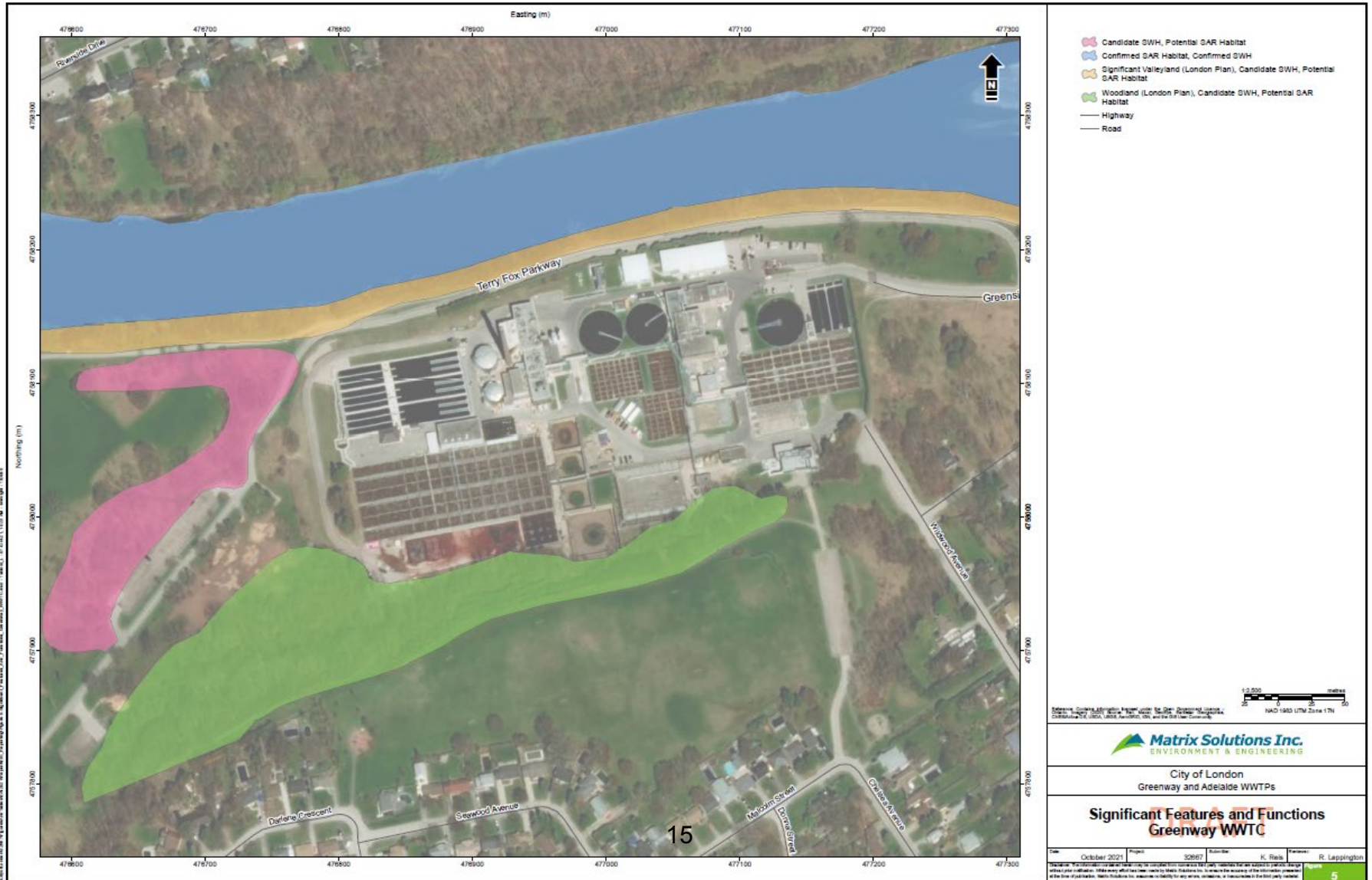
Date: October 2021 | Project: 32687 | Author: K. Reals | Review: R. Lappington

Scale: 1:5,000

North Arrow



Greenway WWTP Climate Change Resiliency Class EA cont'd

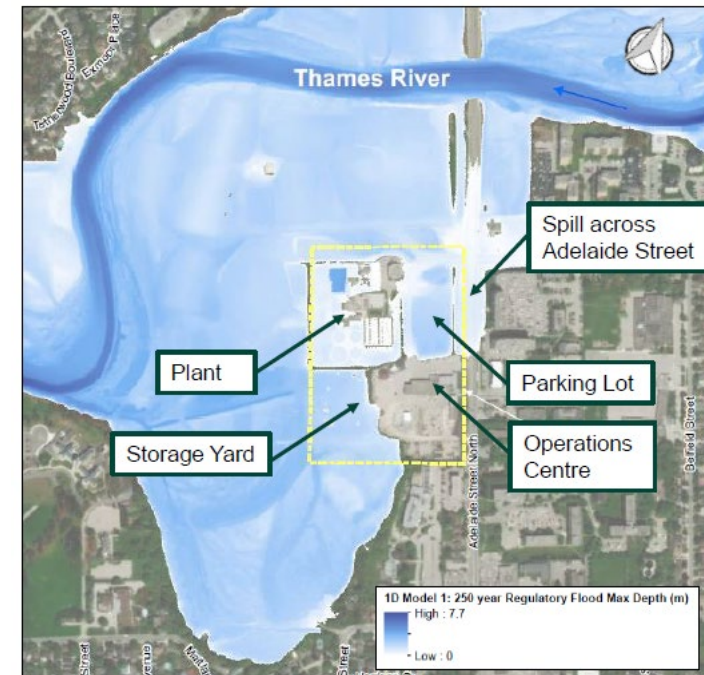


Adelaide WWTP Climate Change Resiliency Class EA

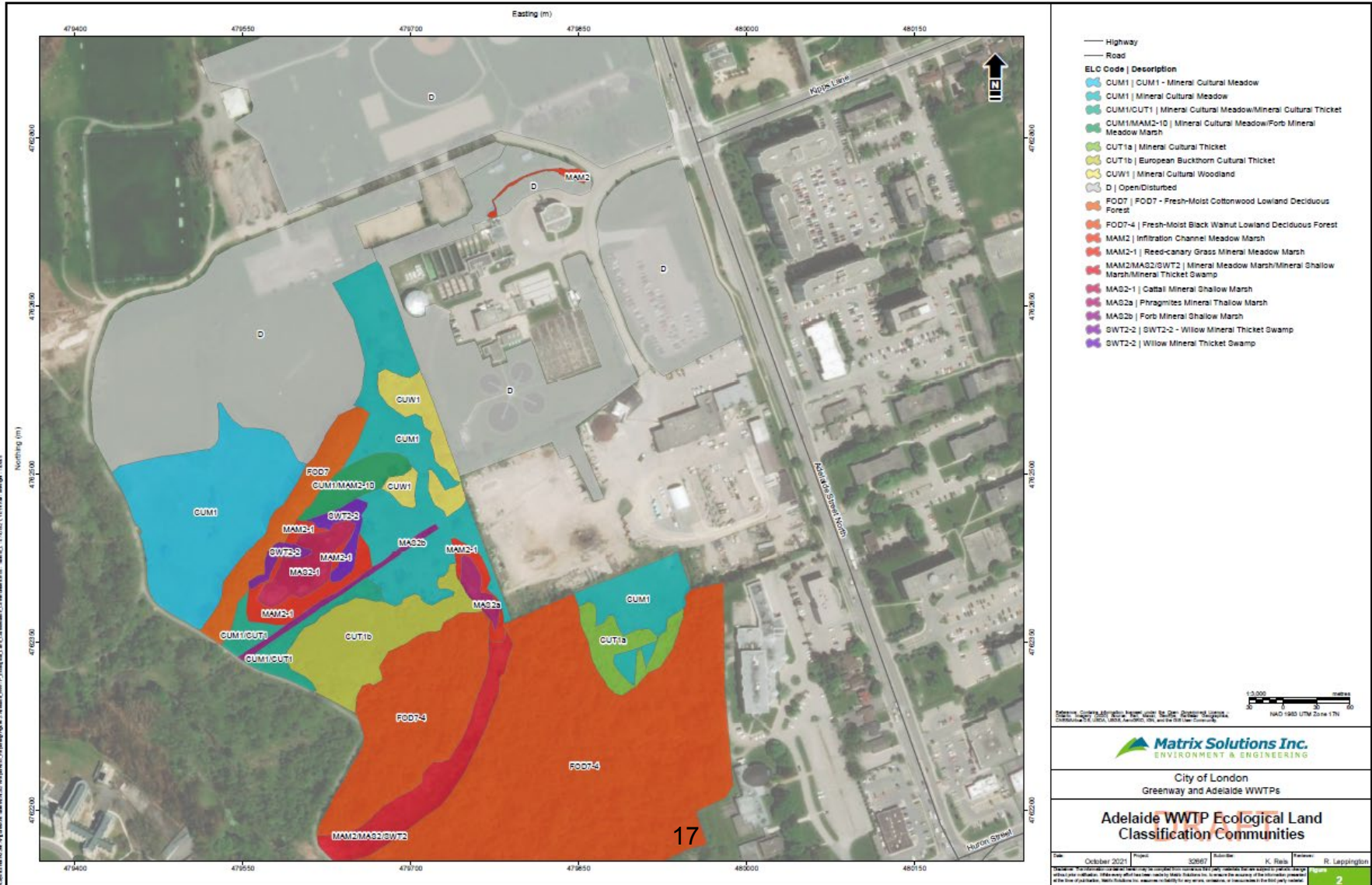
- Federal funding secured through the Disaster Mitigation and Adaption Fund
- Class EA to identify preferred flood protection measures for the Adelaide WWTP to:
 - Improve asset resilience
 - Enhance treatment capabilities and safety of plant staff during extreme weather



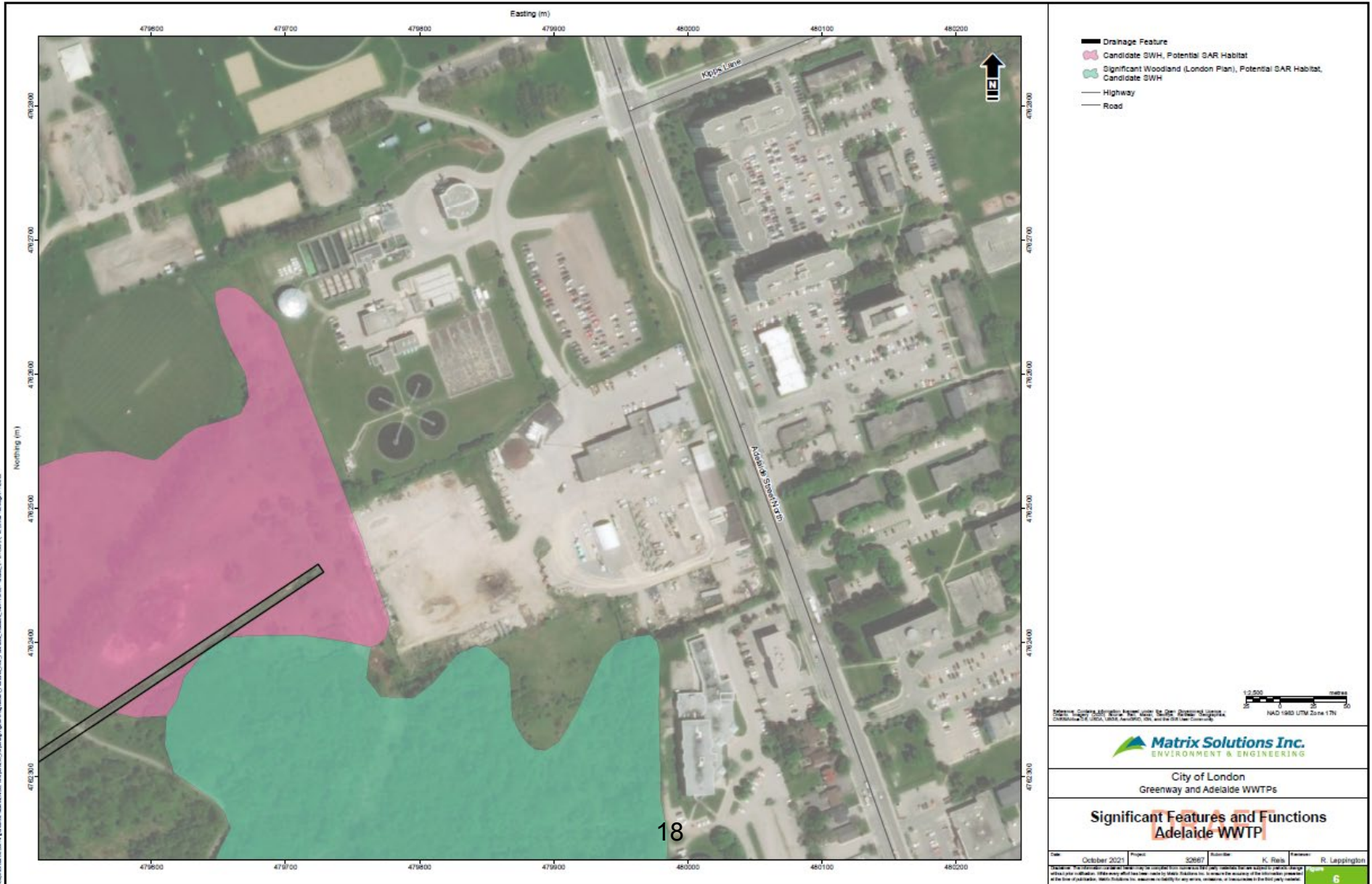
Image Source: Google Earth



Adelaide WWTP Climate Change Resiliency Class EA cont'd



Adelaide WWTP Climate Change Resiliency Class EA cont'd





Biosolids Management Master Plan




- Master Plan will look at how the City is currently managing wastewater solids at five WWTPs and guide how City can meet demands of our growing community over the next 30 years.
- Current Status (PIC #1):
 - Background conditions Evaluated
 - Solids projections for 30 year horizon
 - Developed evaluation criteria and process
 - PIC #1 is available for viewing online

BMMP – Background

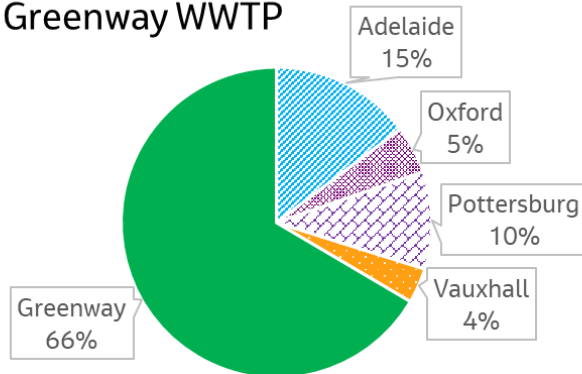
Solids from the other four plants are thickened and transported via truck to Greenway on a daily basis for dewatering and incineration.

Solids Trucking to Greenway WWTP



 Thickening Only
  Thickening, Dewatering, & Incineration
  Truck Haulage

Distribution of solids treated at Greenway WWTP



Photos of wastewater solids



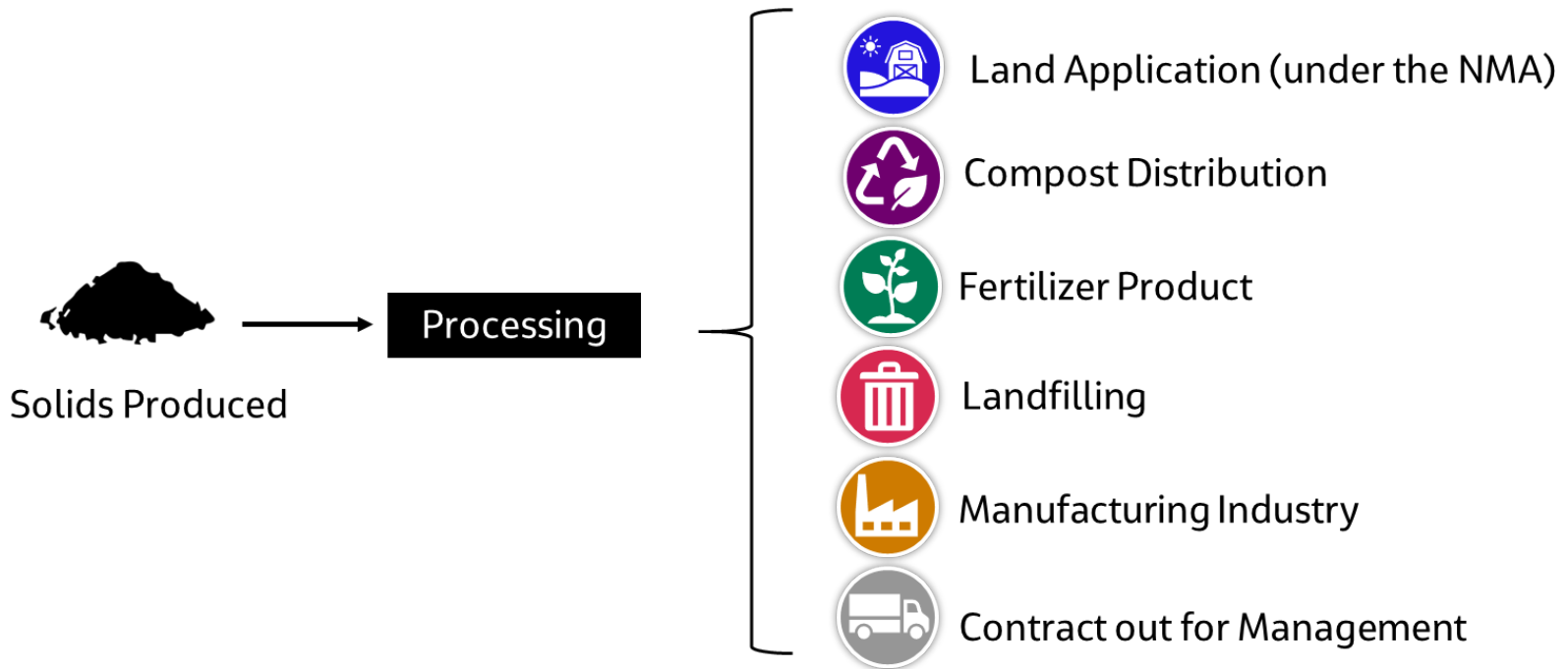
Thickened



Dewatered

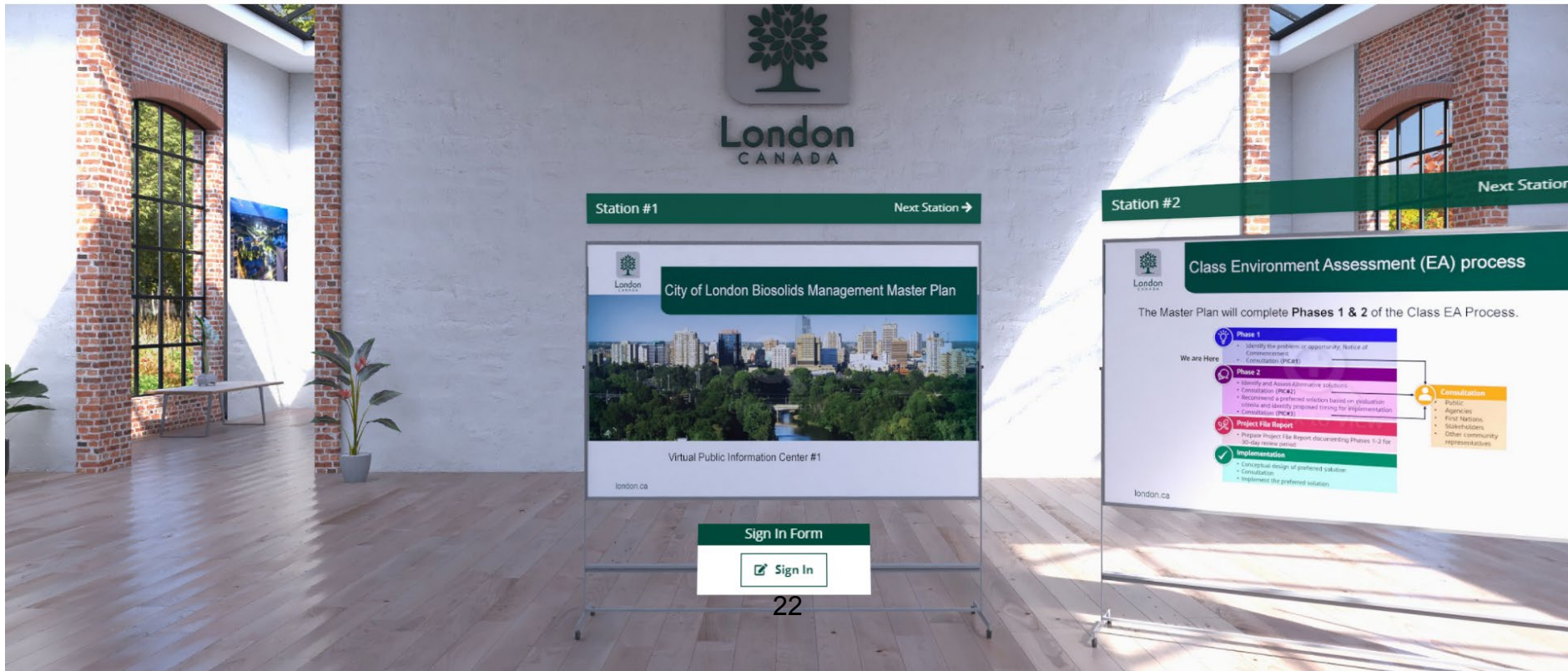
BMMP – Possible End Uses

Examples of processing technologies would include incineration (current practice), digestion, composting, pelletization



BMMP – PIC #1

- PIC #1 is currently available for viewing online at <https://bmmplondon.com/>



Next Steps and Q&A



Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee

Report

The 6th Meeting of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee
September 23, 2021
Virtual Meeting during the COVID-19 Emergency

Attendance PRESENT: S. Levin (Chair), I. Arturo, A. Bilson Darko, P. Ferguson, L. Grieves, S. Hall, S. Heuchan, I. Mohamed, B. Samuels, S. Sivakumar, M. Wallace and I. Whiteside and H. Lysynski (Committee Clerk)

ABSENT: L. Banks, A. Boyer, S. Esun, J. Khan, B. Krichker, K. Moser and R. Trudeau

ALSO PRESENT: C. Creighton, K. Edwards, J. MacKay, M Schulthess and E. Williamson

The meeting was called to order at 5:02 PM

1. Call to Order

1.1 Disclosures of Pecuniary Interest

That it BE NOTED that no pecuniary interests were disclosed.

2. Scheduled Items

None.

3. Consent

3.1 6th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee

That it BE NOTED that the 6th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee, from its meeting held on August 19, 2021, was received.

3.2 Municipal Council Resolution - 5th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee

That it BE NOTED that the Municipal Council resolution adopted at its meeting held on July 6, 2021, with respect to the 5th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee, was received.

3.3 Municipal Council Resolution - 6th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee

That it BE NOTED that the Municipal Council resolution adopted at its meeting held on September 14, 2021, with respect to the 6th Report of the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee, was received.

4. Sub-Committees and Working Groups

4.1 Public Education - Environmentally Significant Areas

That it BE NOTED that the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee held a general discussion with respect to the Working Group report relating to public education in Environmentally Significant Areas.

5. Items for Discussion

5.1 Dingman Creek Subwatershed Stage 2 Lands Municipal Class Environmental Assessment

That it BE NOTED that the Notice of Study Initiation for the Dingman Creek Subwatershed Stage 2 Lands Municipal Class Environmental Assessment dated September 2, 2021, was received for information.

5.2 2020 Community Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas Emissions Inventory

That a Working Group BE ESTABLISHED consisting of I. Arturo (Lead), P. Ferguson, S. Sivakumar and I. Whiteside to review the 2020 Community Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas Emissions Inventory; it being noted that the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee reviewed and received a staff report dated August 31, 2021, with respect to this matter.

6. Adjournment

The meeting adjourned at 5:33 PM.

Notice of Study Initiation

Dingman Creek Subwatershed Stage 2 Lands Municipal Class Environmental Assessment

Please find attached a copy of the Notice of Study Initiation for the subject project.

The City of London has retained KGS Group to undertake a Schedule 'C' Municipal Class Environment Assessment (EA) to update the regulatory floodplain for Dingman Creek and assess potential flood mitigation and stormwater servicing alternatives to address imminent and future flooding and erosion risk within the subwatershed. Through the EA, a range of flood mitigation and stormwater management strategies will be developed. The recommended approach will guide future development, identify mitigative and adaptive flood control works and align with the City's vision for the creek corridor to integrate natural heritage, stormwater management and recreational uses.

As the study progresses, project information will be available on the City's [Get Involved website](#).

The Notice of Study Initiation is being mailed to area property owners, agencies, and Indigenous Communities. This notice will also appear in [the Londoner](#) on September 02 and September 09, 2021.

By copy of this information to the Clerk's Office, I would request that this notice be circulated to other elected officials, as appropriate.

Regards,



Matt Davenport, EIT (he/him)
Engineer in Training
Stormwater Engineering
City of London

300 Dufferin Ave, P.O. Box 5035, London ON N6A 4L9

Cell: 226.219.9826

mdavenport@london.ca | www.london.ca

As part of our ongoing efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19, the City of London has made changes to many City services. Visit our [website for the latest information about City services and COVID-19](#).

Dingman Creek Subwatershed Stage 2 Lands Municipal Class Environmental Assessment

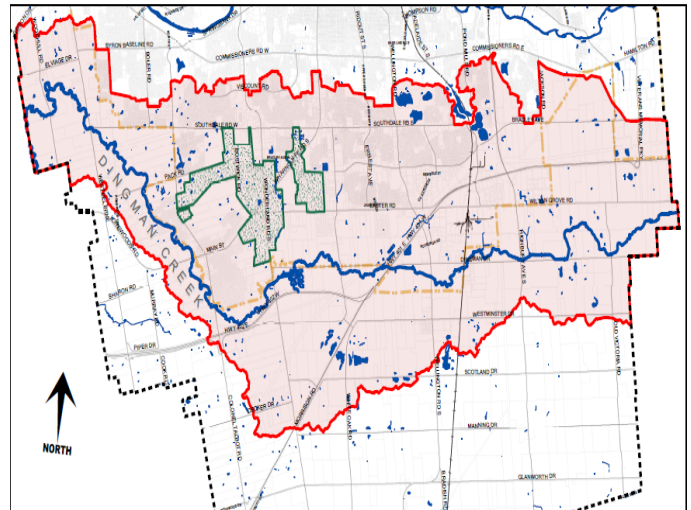
PUBLIC NOTICE

SEPTEMBER 2, 2021

Purpose of Study

The purpose of the Dingman Creek Subwatershed Stage 2 Lands Municipal Class Environmental Assessment (EA) is to update the regulatory floodplain for Dingman Creek and assess potential flood mitigation and stormwater servicing alternatives to address imminent and future flooding and erosion risk within the subwatershed.

Through the EA, a range of flood mitigation and stormwater management strategies will be developed. The recommended approach will guide future development, identify mitigative and adaptive flood control works and align with the City's vision for the creek corridor to integrate natural heritage, stormwater management and recreational uses.



Process

The EA study will be undertaken in accordance with the *Ontario Environmental Assessment Act* and will cover all necessary phases of the Schedule 'C' EA Process. This process includes definition of the problem/opportunity, identification and evaluation of alternative solutions, and selection of a preferred one. There will be opportunity throughout the process for public input, including future Public Information Centres. As the study progresses, information and notices will be posted on the City's "Get Involved" website: <https://getinvolved.london.ca/dingmancreek>

Your feedback is important to us

To provide comments, request additional information, or receive future correspondence related to the project, please contact a member of the project team below:

Adrienne Sones, P.Eng.
Environmental Services Engineer
City of London
(519) 661-2489 ext.5593
asones@london.ca

Fuad Curi, P.Eng.
Project Manager
KGS Group Inc.
(905) 848-7884 ext.516
fcuri@ksgsgroup.com

Under the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* and the *Environmental Assessment Act*, unless otherwise stated in the submission, any personal information such as name, address, telephone number and property location included in a submission will become part of the public record files for this matter and may be released, if requested, to any person.

NOTICE OF PLANNING APPLICATION

Official Plan and Zoning By-law Amendments

179 Meadowlily Road South



File: OZ-9417

Applicant: 1926628 Ontario Inc.

What is Proposed?

Official Plan and Zoning amendments to allow:

- A 3-storey, 21-unit cluster townhouse development
- A minimum front yard depth of 1 m
- A minimum exterior side yard depth of 1 m
- A minimum interior side yard depth of 4.7 m
- Grading and naturalization in the proposed OS4 Zone
- A minimum lot area of 518.5 sq.m for the proposed OS4 Zone
- A minimum lot frontage of 10 m for the proposed OS4 Zone
- A minimum lot area of 998.1 sq.m for the proposed OS5 Zone

LEARN MORE & PROVIDE INPUT

Please provide any comments by **October 27, 2021**

Catherine Maton

cmaton@london.ca

519-661-CITY (2489) ext. 5074

Planning & Development, City of London, 300 Dufferin Avenue, 6th Floor,
London ON PO BOX 5035 N6A 4L9

File: OZ-9417

london.ca/planapps

You may also discuss any concerns you have with your Ward Councillor:

Councillor Steven Hillier

shillier@london.ca

519-661-CITY (2489) ext. 4014

**If you are a landlord, please post a copy of this notice where your tenants can see it.
We want to make sure they have a chance to take part.**

Application Details

Requested Amendment to the 1989 Official Plan

To change the designation of the property from Urban Reserve Community Growth to Low Density Residential to permit the proposed townhouse use. The City may also consider a Specific Area Policy to the proposed Low Density Residential designation to permit a density of 50 units per hectare or, alternatively, a Multi-Family, Medium Density Residential designation.

Requested Zoning By-law Amendment

To change the zoning from a Holding Urban Reserve (h-2*UR1) Zone to a Residential R5 Special Provision (R5-6(_)) Zone, an Open Space Special Provision (OS4(_)) Zone, and an Open Space Special Provision (OS5(_)) Zone. Changes to the currently permitted land uses and development regulations are summarized below.

Both Official Plans and the Zoning By-law are available at london.ca.

Current Zoning

Zone: Holding Urban Reserve (h-2*UR1) Zone

Permitted Uses: Existing dwellings; agricultural uses except for mushroom farms, commercial greenhouses, livestock facilities, and manure storage facilities; conservation lands; managed woodlot; wayside pit; passive recreation use; farm gate sales

Special Provisions: None.

Requested Zoning

Zone: Residential R5 (R5-6) Zone

Permitted Uses: Townhouses and stacked townhouses

Special Provisions: A reduced minimum front yard depth of 1m, whereas a minimum of 6m is required; a reduced minimum exterior side yard depth of 1m, whereas a minimum of 8m is required; and a reduced minimum interior side yard depth of 4.7m, whereas a minimum of 6m is required

Residential Density: 50 units per hectare

Height: 12m

Requested Zoning

Zone: Open Space Special Provision (OS4(_)) Zone

Permitted Uses: Conservation lands; conservation works; golf courses without structures; private parks without structures; public parks without structures; recreational golf courses without structures; cultivation or use of land for agriculture/horticultural purposes; sports fields without structures

Special Provisions: To permit grading and naturalization; a reduced minimum lot area of 518.5 sq.m, whereas a minimum of 4000 sq.m is required; and a reduced minimum lot frontage of 10m, whereas a minimum of 15m is required

Requested Zoning

Zone: Open Space Special Provision (OS5(_)) Zone

Permitted Uses: Conservation lands; conservation works; passive recreation uses which include hiking trails and multi-use pathways; managed woodlots

Special Provisions: A reduced minimum lot area of 998.1 sq.m, whereas a minimum of 4000 sq.m is required

An Environmental Impact Study has been prepared to assist in the evaluation of this application.

Planning Policies

Any change to the Zoning By-law must conform to the policies of the Official Plan, London's long-range planning document. These lands are currently designated as Urban Reserve Community Growth in the 1989 Official Plan, which permits a limited range of uses based on the nature of their existing use as the main uses.

The subject lands are in the Neighbourhoods Place Type in The London Plan, permitting range of low-rise residential uses.

How Can You Participate in the Planning Process?

You have received this Notice because someone has applied to change the Official Plan designation and the zoning of land located within 120 metres of a property you own, or your landlord has posted the notice of application in your building. The City reviews and makes decisions on such planning applications in accordance with the requirements of the Planning Act. The ways you can participate in the City's planning review and decision making process are summarized below.

See More Information

You can review additional information and material about this application by:

- Contacting the City's Planner listed on the first page of this Notice; or
- Viewing the application-specific page at london.ca/planapps
- Opportunities to view any file materials in-person by appointment can be arranged through the file Planner.

Reply to this Notice of Application

We are inviting your comments on the requested changes at this time so that we can consider them as we review the application and prepare a report that will include Planning & Development staff's recommendation to the City's Planning and Environment Committee. Planning considerations usually include such matters as land use, development intensity, and form of development.

Attend a Future Public Participation Meeting

The Planning and Environment Committee will consider the requested Official Plan and zoning changes on a date that has not yet been scheduled. The City will send you another notice inviting you to attend this meeting, which is required by the Planning Act. You will also be invited to provide your comments at this public participation meeting. A neighbourhood or community association may exist in your area. If it reflects your views on this application, you may wish to select a representative of the association to speak on your behalf at the public participation meeting. Neighbourhood Associations are listed on the Neighbourgood website. The Planning and Environment Committee will make a recommendation to Council, which will make its decision at a future Council meeting.

What Are Your Legal Rights?

Notification of Council Decision

If you wish to be notified of the decision of the City of London on the proposed official plan amendment and zoning by-law amendment, you must make a written request to the City Clerk, 300 Dufferin Ave., P.O. Box 5035, London, ON, N6A 4L9, or at docservices@london.ca. You will also be notified if you speak to the Planning and Environment Committee at the public meeting about this application and leave your name and address with the Secretary of the Committee.

Right to Appeal to the Ontario Land Tribunal

If a person or public body would otherwise have an ability to appeal the decision of the Council of the Corporation of the City of London to the Ontario Land Tribunal but the person or public body does not make oral submissions at a public meeting or make written submissions to the City of London before the proposed official plan amendment is adopted, the person or public body is not entitled to appeal the decision.

If a person or public body does not make oral submissions at a public meeting or make written submissions to the City of London before the proposed official plan amendment is adopted, the person or public body may not be added as a party to the hearing of an appeal before the Ontario Land Tribunal unless, in the opinion of the Tribunal, there are reasonable grounds to add the person or public body as a party.

For more information go to <https://olt.gov.on.ca/appeals-process/forms/>.

Notice of Collection of Personal Information

Personal information collected and recorded at the Public Participation Meeting, or through written submissions on this subject, is collected under the authority of the Municipal Act, 2001, as amended, and the Planning Act, 1990 R.S.O. 1990, c.P.13 and will be used by Members of Council and City of London staff in their consideration of this matter. The written submissions, including names and contact information and the associated reports arising from the public participation process, will be made available to the public, including publishing on the City's website. Video recordings of the Public Participation Meeting may also be posted to the City of London's website. Questions about this collection should be referred to Cathy Saunders, City Clerk, 519-661-CITY(2489) ext. 4937.

Accessibility

Alternative accessible formats or communication supports are available upon request. Please contact developmentsservices@london.ca for more information.

Site Concept



Site Concept Plan

The above image represents the applicant's proposal as submitted and may change.

Building Renderings



Conceptual Rendering

The above image represents the applicant's proposal as submitted and may change.



PUBLIC MEETING NOTICE

London Plan and Zoning By-law Amendments

Encouraging the Growing of Food in Urban Areas

File: OZ-9332/City of London

What is Proposed?

Amendments to the London Plan, Zoning By-law and Site Plan Control By-law to make it easier to grow food in the urban area (ie. within the Urban Growth Boundary) in accordance with the Urban Agriculture Strategy, which was adopted by Council in November 2017. This project focuses on the “Growing” component of the Strategy and is being considered under the Strategy’s guiding principle to develop supportive municipal policies, regulations, and bylaws, and remove policy barriers to urban agriculture. The intent of the changes is to expand the permissions for growing inside and outside of buildings, in urban greenhouses and in shipping containers, consider policies and regulations to permit growing of food in most place types and zones, and review application process requirements for urban agriculture.



YOU ARE INVITED!

Further to the Notice of Application you received on March 31, 2021, you are invited to a public meeting of the Planning and Environment Committee to be held

Meeting Date and Time: Monday, November 1, 2021, no earlier than 4:30 p.m.

Meeting Location: City Hall, 300 Dufferin Avenue, 3rd Floor

Please refer to the enclosed Public Participation Meeting Process insert.

For more information contact:

Chuck Parker
cparker@london.ca
519-661-CITY (2489) ext. 4648
Long Range Planning and Research
206 Dundas St., London ON N6A 1G7
File: OZ-9332

london.ca/planapps

**If you are a landlord, please post a copy of this notice where your tenants can see it.
We want to make sure they have a chance to take part.**

Application Details

Any change to the Zoning By-law must conform to the policies of the London Plan and the 1989 Official Plan, London's long-range planning documents. There are a number of policies in the London Plan which support urban agriculture, particularly the Food System policies (Policies 648-686). The 1989 Official Plan contains general references to agriculture and horticulture which support those uses in specific designations and zones.

This is a City-wide review of London Plan policies, zoning by-law regulations and the site plan by-law.

The London Plan and the Zoning By-law are available at london.ca.

How Can You Participate in the Planning Process?

You have received this Notice because you have an interest in urban agriculture or are included on the standard City circulation list. The City reviews and makes decisions on such planning reviews in accordance with the requirements of the Planning Act. If you previously provided written or verbal comments about this planning review, we have considered your comments as part of our review and in the preparation of the planning report and recommendation to the Planning and Environment Committee. The additional ways you can participate in the City's planning review and decision making process are summarized below.

See More Information

You can review additional information and material about this review by:

- Contacting the City's Planner listed on the first page of this Notice; or
- Viewing the application-specific page at london.ca/planapps
- Opportunities to view any file materials in-person by appointment can be arranged through the file Planner.

Attend This Public Participation Meeting

The Planning and Environment Committee will consider the Official Plan and zoning changes at this meeting, which is required by the Planning Act. You will be invited to provide your comments at this public participation meeting. A neighbourhood or community association may exist in your area. If it reflects your views on this review, you may wish to select a representative of the association to speak on your behalf at the public participation meeting. Neighbourhood Associations are listed on the Neighbourgood website. The Planning and Environment Committee will make a recommendation to Council, which will make its decision at a future Council meeting.

Alternative formats to in-person attendance are available through telephone or virtual web streaming (computer) application. Pre-registration is required to access these options and can be found in the Public Participation insert.

Please refer to the enclosed Public Participation Meeting Process insert.

What Are Your Legal Rights?

Notification of Council Decision

If you wish to be notified of the decision of the City of London on the proposed official plan amendment and zoning by-law amendment, you must make a written request to the City Clerk, 300 Dufferin Ave., P.O. Box 5035, London, ON, N6A 4L9, or at docservices@london.ca. You will also be notified if you speak to the Planning and Environment Committee at the public meeting about this application and leave your name and address with the Secretary of the Committee.

Right to Appeal to the Ontario Land Tribunal

If a person or public body would otherwise have an ability to appeal the decision of the Council of the Corporation of the City of London to the Ontario Land Tribunal but the person or public body does not make oral submissions at a public meeting or make written submissions to the City of London before the proposed official plan amendment is adopted, the person or public body is not entitled to appeal the decision.

If a person or public body does not make oral submissions at a public meeting or make written submissions to the City of London before the proposed official plan amendment is adopted, the person or public body may not be added as a party to the hearing of an appeal before the

Ontario Land Tribunal unless, in the opinion of the Tribunal, there are reasonable grounds to add the person or public body as a party.

If a person or public body would otherwise have an ability to appeal the decision of the Council of the Corporation of the City of London to the Ontario Land Tribunal but the person or public body does not make oral submissions at a public meeting or make written submissions to the City of London before the by-law is passed, the person or public body is not entitled to appeal the decision.

If a person or public body does not make oral submissions at a public meeting or make written submissions to the City of London before the by-law is passed, the person or public body may not be added as a party to the hearing of an appeal before the Ontario Land Tribunal unless, in the opinion of the Tribunal, there are reasonable grounds to do so.

For more information go to <https://olt.gov.on.ca/appeals-process/forms/>.

Notice of Collection of Personal Information

Personal information collected and recorded at the Public Participation Meeting, or through written submissions on this subject, is collected under the authority of the Municipal Act, 2001, as amended, and the Planning Act, 1990 R.S.O. 1990, c.P.13 and will be used by Members of Council and City of London staff in their consideration of this matter. The written submissions, including names and contact information and the associated reports arising from the public participation process, will be made available to the public, including publishing on the City's website. Video recordings of the Public Participation Meeting may also be posted to the City of London's website. Questions about this collection should be referred to Cathy Saunders, City Clerk, 519-661-CITY(2489) ext. 4937.

Accessibility

The City of London is committed to providing accessible programs and services for supportive and accessible meetings. We can provide you with American Sign Language (ASL) interpretation, live captioning, magnifiers and/or hearing assistive (t coil) technology. Please contact us at planning@london.ca or 519-661-4980 by October 24, 2021 to request any of these services.

As part of the City's ongoing efforts to slow the spread of COVID-19, and in keeping with the regulations and guidelines provided by the Province of Ontario, the Public Participation Meeting process has been modified. The capacity for individuals in City Hall meeting rooms and the Council Chambers Public Gallery will reflect the requirement for 2m physical distancing, with designated seating and standing areas being provided.

Please refer to the public meeting notice for all options available for you to participate in the planning process.

Public Participation Meeting (PPM) Process

- Members of the public are asked to “pre-register” to speak in person at a PPM. Pre-registered speakers will be given priority access to entering City Hall. Speakers will be limited to five minutes of verbal presentation.
 - **Pre-register by calling 519-661-2489 ex. 7100; or by emailing PPMClerks@london.ca** Please indicate the PPM subject matter when contacting the Clerk's Office. Registrations will be confirmed.¹
 - When pre-registering, members of the public will have a brief COVID-19 health screening and will be asked to self-screen prior to entering City Hall.
- Presentations will be strictly verbal; any other submission of photos, slides or written information must be made outside of the PPM. These can be forwarded to the Planner associated with this application and/or to the registration email, noted above. In order to be considered, all submissions should be made prior to the Council meeting when the Planning and Environment Committee recommendation regarding the subject matter is considered.

Public Participation Meeting (PPM) Process – At the meeting

- Members of the public should self-screen before entering City Hall. You likely will be greeted by security upon entering the building. A mask/face covering is required at all times in City Hall.
- Each committee room in use for the PPM will broadcast the meeting taking place in the Council Chambers.
- City Staff will be in each assigned room to assist members of the public.
- When appropriate, individual members of the public will have an opportunity to speak to the committee remotely, using the camera/microphone in the committee room. Floor markings will indicate where to stand.

Council Chambers

- Committee members and staff will be present in the Chambers (physically, or by remote attendance).
- There will be no public access to the Council floor.

¹ Notice of Collection of Personal Information – information is collected under the authority of the *Municipal Act, 2001*, as amended, and the *Planning Act*, 1990 RSO 1990, c.P. 13, and will be used by Members of Council and City of London staff in their consideration of this matter. Please see additional information on the enclosed Public Meeting Notice pages.

Aanii / Koolamalsi / Sheko:li / Hello,

The Environmental Management Guidelines (EMGs) was circulated as a consent item with the Planning and Environment Committee Agenda on the October 13th for the October 18th meeting. A link to the agenda item can be found [here](#). For your convenience, I've also attached a digital copy of the EMG. Please submit comments you may have on major concepts or concerns in advance of meetings for Staff review.

The purpose of the report is to provide Council with the final draft of the EMGs that are to be circulated for public review in advance of a future public meeting. Based on April 15, 2021, the Local Planning Appeal Tribunal (LPAT) issued an Order approving the Environmental policies of The London Plan. This approval included several additions, deletions and modifications to the policies as adopted by City Council and approved by the Ministry of Municipal Affairs and Housing in 2016. Staff have reviewed the approved policies and made further revisions and refinements to the draft EMGs where necessary to provide appropriate direction.

Changes to the previous draft included in this version focused on reducing redundancy, improving clarity, aligning the EMGs with approved policy and incorporating external group comments where appropriate.

Staff are available for an additional meeting with each group to review, and resolve where possible, any further comments that are received. Meetings will be scheduled between November 15th and November 26th. A public participation meeting will be held later in 2021 to receive public comment prior to any Council consideration.

Best Regards,



Emily Williamson, M.Sc.

Ecologist | Planner

Long Range Planning, Research & Ecology

Planning & Development

City of London

206 Dundas St., London, ON N6A 1G7

P: 519.661.CITY (2489) x 7602 | Fax: 519.661.5397

ewilliamson@london.ca | www.london.ca

As part of our ongoing efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19, the City of London has made changes to many City services. Visit [our website](#) for the latest information about City services and COVID-19.

City of London Environmental Management Guidelines (2021)

Phase 2 - DRAFT FOR REVIEW
June, 2021



Table of Contents

1.	Introduction	1-1
1.1	The London Plan	1-1
1.2	First Nations Engagement & Consultation	1-1
1.2.1	Chippewas of the Thames First Nation	1-2
1.2.2	Munsee-Delaware Nation	1-2
1.2.3	Oneida Nation of the Thames	1-2
1.3	Guideline Document Organization	1-3
2.	Preparation of Environmental Studies	2-1
2.1	Preconsultation & Determination of Required Studies	2-1
2.2	Environmental Study Scoping	2-1
2.2.1	Environmental Study Scoping Checklist (EESC) / Terms of Reference	2-1
2.2.2	SLSR and EIS Study Scoping Meeting	2-2
2.2.3	EESC Approval	2-2
2.3	Background Information Review & Field Investigations	2-2
2.4	Subject Lands Status Reports (SLSR)	2-3
2.5	Environmental Assessment for Infrastructure Projects	2-3
2.6	Environmental Impact Studies	2-4
2.6.1	The Purpose of an Environmental Impact Study (EIS)	2-4
2.6.2	The Requirement for an EIS	2-4
2.6.3	Focused EIS	2-5
2.6.4	Overview of EIS Process	2-6
2.6.5	EIS Report Requirements	2-7
2.6.6	Report Content	2-8
3.	Evaluation of Significance and Ecological Function ...	3-1
3.1	Significant Woodlands and Woodlands	3-2
3.1.1	Policy and Context	3-2
3.1.2	Significant Woodland Evaluation Criteria	3-4
3.2	Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs)	3-17
3.2.1	City of London Subwatershed Regions Policy and Context	3-17
3.2.2	Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs) Evaluation Criteria ...	3-20
3.3	Provincially Significant Wetlands, Wetlands and Unevaluated Wetlands	3-26
3.4	Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH)	3-27
3.5	Significant Valleylands and Valleylands	3-28

4.	Boundary Delineation of Natural Heritage Features and Areas	4-1
4.1	Policy Context and General Guidance	4-1
4.2	Wetlands	4-2
4.3	Significant Woodlands and Woodlands	4-3
4.4	Valleylands and Significant Valleylands	4-3
4.5	Significant Wildlife Habitat	4-4
4.6	Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs)	4-4
4.7	Boundary Delineation Guidelines	4-5
5.	Determining Ecological Buffers	5-1
5.1	Definition of a Buffer	5-1
5.2	Approach	5-2
5.3	Buffer Determination Process	5-2
5.3.1	Step 1 – Determine feature to be protected, delineate boundaries and determine potential impacts	5-3
5.3.2	Step 2 – Apply Minimum Buffer Widths	5-5
5.3.3	Step 3 – Determination of Site-Specific Buffer Widths	5-6
5.3.4	Step 4 - Buffer Restoration and Enhancement	5-9
5.4	Prohibited and Permitted Uses within a Buffer	5-10
6.	Ecological Replacement and Compensation	6-1
6.1	Context and Process	6-2
6.1.1	Policy Context	6-2
6.1.2	Scientific and Technical Context	6-3
6.2	Approval Process	6-3
6.3	Guiding Principles for Ecological Compensation	6-5
6.4	Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan	6-6
6.5	Determining Appropriate Measures	6-6
6.5.1	Wetlands	6-7
6.5.2	Significant Woodlands and Woodlands	6-7
6.5.3	Other Features	6-7
6.6	Implementing Replacement and Compensation	6-7
6.6.1	Site Selection	6-8
6.6.2	Replicating Ecosystem Structure and Functions	6-9
6.6.3	Plant Selection	6-9
6.7	Cash-in-Lieu	6-9
6.8	Tracking Compensation	6-9
7.	Environmental Monitoring	7-1
7.1	Policy and Context	7-1

7.2	Environmental Management Plan (EMP) Requirements.....	7-2
7.2.1	Environmental Management Plan Report Requirements	7-3
7.2.2	Monitoring Timeline and Responsibilities.....	7-4
7.2.3	Pre-Construction Monitoring.....	7-5
7.2.4	Construction Monitoring.....	7-5
7.2.5	Post-Construction Monitoring	7-6
8.	Glossary of Terms	8-1
9.	References.....	9-1

List of Tables

- Table 2.1: Areas Subject to Environmental Impact Studies
- Table 3.1: Rare Plant Species Presence / Absence
- Table 5.1: Summary of Overall Buffer Width Determination Process
- Table 5.2: Recommended Minimum/Maximum Buffer Widths
- Table 5.3: Criteria for the Determination of Greater than Minimum Buffers
- Table 5.4: Potential Buffer Enhancement Measures

List of Figures

- Figure 2.1: Environmental Process Stages for Infrastructure Projects
- Figure 2.2: The EIS Process, including Subject Land Status Report and EIS Approval Process Steps.
- Figure 3.1: City of London Glacial Geomorphology of the dominant physiographic units
- Figure 3.2: City of London Subwatershed Regions
- Figure 4.1: Boundary Delineation Guideline Legend
- Figure 4.2: Guideline 1 Illustration
- Figure 4.3: Guideline 2 Illustration
- Figure 4.4: Guideline 3 Illustration
- Figure 4.5: Guideline 4 Illustration
- Figure 4.6: Guideline 5 Illustration
- Figure 4.7: Guideline 6 Illustration
- Figure 4.8: Guideline 7 Illustration
- Figure 4.9: Guideline 8 Illustration
- Figure 5.1: Illustration of a buffer implemented for the protection of a Natural Heritage Feature adjacent to a development
- Figure 5.2: Illustration of buffer profile

Figure 6.1: Illustration of the required approach whereby all options for avoiding and / or mitigating impacts must be explored with the City before compensation can be considered

Figure 7.1: Environmental Monitoring Process

List of Appendices

Appendix A – EMG Process Flow Chart

Appendix B – Environmental Study Scoping Checklist

Appendix C – Data Collection Standards

Appendix D – Woodland Evaluation Form

Appendix E - Net Effects Table Template

DRAFT

List of Acronyms and Abbreviations

ANSI	Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest
CFZ.....	Critical Function Zone
COSEWIC.....	Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada
COSSARO	Committee on the Status of Species at Risk in Ontario
COTTFN	Chippewas of the Thames First Nation
EA.....	Environmental Assessment
EEPAC.....	Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee
ELC.....	Ecological Land Classification
ESSC	Environmental Study Scoping Checklist
EIS.....	Environmental Impact Study
EMG.....	Environmental Management Guidelines
ER.....	Environmental Review
ESA.....	Environmentally Significant Areas
GIS.....	Geographic Information System
IPR.....	Initial Proposal Report
LIO	Land Information Ontario
MBCA.....	Migratory Bird Convention Act
MCC.....	Mean Coefficient of Conservatism
MDN.....	Munsee-Delaware Nation
MECP.....	Ministry of Environment, Conservation and Parks
MNRF.....	Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry
NHS	Natural Heritage System
Oneida	Oneida Nation of the Thames
OWES	Ontario Wetland Evaluation System
PSW.....	Provincially Significant Wetlands
SAR	Species At Risk
SWH	Significant Wildlife Habitat
SLSR	Subject Land Status Report
TRT.....	Technical Review Team

Please note these Environmental Management Guidelines (2021) incorporate updates to and supersede the former Environmental Management Guidelines (2007) in accordance with **The London Plan** (Policies 1432_ and 1424_). The specific locations and cross-references to the updated guidelines are summarized below.

Former Natural Heritage System Guideline (as listed in The London Plan Policy 1719)	Superseded by the Section in these Environmental Management Guidelines (2021) (as listed below)	The London Plan Policy Cross-Reference
<i>4. Guide to Plant Selection for Natural Heritage Areas and Buffers</i>	Key guidance included in Section 5 Determining Ecological Buffers.	1719_
<i>5. Guideline Documents for Environmentally Significant Areas Identification, Evaluation and Boundary Delineation</i>	Section 3 Evaluation of Significance and Ecological Function, Section 3.2 Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs)	1367_, 1369_, 1719_
<i>6. Guidelines for Determining Setbacks and Ecological Buffers</i>	Section 5 Determining Ecological Buffers	1350_, 1414_, 1719_
<i>7. Guidelines for the Evaluation of Ecologically Significant Woodlands</i>	Section 3 Evaluation of Significance and Ecological Function, Section 3.1 Significant Woodlands and Woodlands	1340_, 1342_, 1719_
<i>8. Guidelines for the Preparation and Review of Environmental Impact Studies</i>	Section 2 Preparation of Environmental Studies, Section 2.6 Environmental Impact Studies	1413_, 1719_

Special thanks to Margot Ursic of Grounded Solutions Services Ltd. for her input into this guidance document.

1. Introduction

The following Environmental Management Guidelines (EMGs) are intended to provide technical guidance in implementing policies of **The London Plan** (2016a; hereafter **The London Plan**) as they relate to the identification, delineation and protection of the natural heritage features and areas that form the City of London's Natural Heritage System (NHS). The Natural Heritage policies of **The London Plan** provide direction for the identification and protection of natural heritage features and areas and the ecological functions, processes, and linkages that they provide over the long term. These guidelines are aligned with federal and provincial policies, provincial and municipal planning processes, relevant data sources, current scientific knowledge and best management practices. As an integral part of the environmental planning process, these guidelines also include the provisions for stakeholder and First Nations engagement and consultation.

The City of London has prepared these EMGs for the effective, consistent, and streamlined implementation of policies and legislation related to the protection of the NHS. The preparation of these guidelines included consultation with external resource groups (including local nature groups, development organizations, conservation authorities, the Environmental and Ecological Planning Advisory Committee (EEPAC) and the First Nations communities within close proximity to the City of London, to include a wide range of knowledge-bases and perspectives.

Although these guidelines provide a framework for implementing policies related to the NHS, it remains the responsibility of the proponent to review the applicable policies and regulations, and be familiar with the current and relevant scientific and technical literature to ensure the most up-to-date information is used throughout the process.

This document replaces the previous Environmental Management Guidelines (2007).

1.1 The London Plan

The London Plan identifies these EMGs as a source of technical guidance to facilitate in the implementation of its Natural Heritage policies. These policies are based on the *Provincial Policy Statement* which represents minimum standards. *“Within the framework of the provincial policy-led planning system, planning authorities and decision-makers may go beyond these minimum standards to address matters of importance to a specific community, unless doing so would conflict with any policy of the Provincial Policy Statement (MMAH, 2020).* The requirement for the preparation and up-date of these guidelines is outlined in **The London Plan**:

“These guidelines shall be updated as required to reflect changes to provincial policy and technical documents and to reflect improvements in scientific knowledge regarding natural features and ecological functions” (Policy 1424).

These EMGs also identify related requirements from other policies and legislation (e.g., *Provincial Policy Statement, Endangered Species Act*, etc.) that must be considered, where appropriate. Additional related requirements and/or studies may be required as part of the approvals process under provincial, federal, or conservation authority's jurisdiction (e.g., Overall Benefits Permits for Species at Risk, additional hydrogeological studies under the *Conservation Authorities Act*, etc.) which will be identified by those agencies through the approvals process.

1.2 First Nations Engagement & Consultation

The City of London recognizes the importance of creating a working relationship with neighbouring First Nations communities and exploring opportunities for collaboration on common objectives, and has incorporated feedback from the following First Nation communities in to the EMG update process:

- Chippewas of the Thames First Nation (COTTFN);
- Munsee-Delaware Nation (MDN); and,
- Oneida Nation of the Thames (Oneida).

Early engagement and consultation with local First Nation communities within the vicinity of the Thames River provides important insight, and information, and is critical in protecting the NHS within and beyond the City of London's boundaries. Consultation is based on whether a proposed development will have a direct or indirect effect on the Thames River. COTTFN, MDN and Oneida have a deeply spiritual, cultural and practical reliance on the river that flows downstream of the City of London, through their communities. Early engagement and consultation will allow the communities sufficient time to assess, conduct early consultation with their respective advisory committees, and Chiefs and Councils (if required) and formulate a response back to the developer. Proponents are expected to plan and budget for First Nation engagement and consultation. It is expected that the applicable consultation protocols will be followed for each of the First Nations being engaged.

The following subsections, provided by each of the respective First Nations, outlines the background and distinctiveness of each Nation and provides links to information about how they can and should be contacted for engagement.

1.2.1 Chippewas of the Thames First Nation

Chippewas of the Thames First Nation (COTTFN) is an Anishinabek community also known as Deshkan Ziibiing (At/On/In Antlered [Thames] River in the Ojibway language). Their community is approximately 10,800 acres in size, and is located southwest of London, Ontario. There are roughly 3000 members, with nearly 1000 members living on-reserve. Their people and ancestors have lived and travelled throughout Turtle Island (North America) for countless generations. Traditions of hunting, fishing, and storytelling endure to this day, and will be passed on for countless generations to come.

COTTFN has developed its own consultation protocol called Wiindmaagewin (to talk through) — a document and a process that will guide the development of positive working relationships. The background to the consultation process, along with Wiindmaagewin can be reviewed at the following link: <https://www.cottfn.com/consultation/>.

1.2.2 Munsee-Delaware Nation

The traditional lands of the Munsee speaking peoples covered an area in what is now the United States, from the mouth of the Delaware River up to its source, then east to the Hudson River and then south to its mouth and including Manhattan and Staten Islands. Their language is one of the oldest of the Algonkian languages and is acknowledged by the Algonkian speaking peoples as Grandfather.

The ancestors of Munsee-Delaware Nation (MDN) moved to their present location in 1783 based on a promise from the Crown for land lost in the United States. MDN has developed its own policy for “receiving free, prior and informed consent from Munsee-Delaware Nation” outlined in the Munsee-Delaware First Nation Consultation and Accommodation Policy. General and contact information for MDN can be found at their website: <http://munseedelaware.squarespace.com/>.

1.2.3 Oneida Nation of the Thames

Established in 1840 as the ‘Oneida Settlement’, the Oneida people are known within the Iroquois Confederacy as Onyota’a:ka (People of the Standing Stone). Much like their ancestors, the Oneida peoples of today, maintain a deeply rooted connection to the land and to their Iroquois culture and traditions.

The Oneida Nation of the Thames (Oneida) is home to 2,172 residents and has a total membership of 6,270. Located in picturesque southwestern Ontario, the Oneida Nation Settlement borders lush and fertile agricultural lands and is nestled along the eastern shore of the Thames River 30 kilometres south of the City of London. General and contact information for the Oneida Nation can be found at their website: <https://oneida.on.ca/>

1.3 Guideline Document Organization

The Environmental Management Guidelines document is comprised of the following six separate, but complementary guidelines:

2. Preparation of Environmental Studies (superceded by *1.0 Guidelines for the Preparation and Review of Environmental Impact Statements (EIS)*);
3. Evaluation of Significance and Ecological Function (superceded by *2.0 Data Collection Standards for Ecological Inventory* and *4.0 Guidelines for the Evaluation of Ecologically Significant Woodlands*);
4. Boundary Delineation (superceded by *3.0 Guideline Documents for Environmentally Significant Areas Identification, Evaluation and Boundary Delineation*);
5. Buffer Determination (superceded by *5.0 Guidelines for Determining Setbacks and Ecological Buffers*);
6. Ecological Compensation; and,
7. Environmental Monitoring.

In general, these guidelines are organized in chronological order in which they are intended to be undertaken. However, there is considerable reference between and among sections to ensure that the processes are being completed efficiently and effectively. It is important to consider information from all of the guidelines outlined in this document, as well as external sources of information, as applicable.

2. Preparation of Environmental Studies

2.1 Preconsultation & Determination of Required Studies

The London Plan identifies various studies that may be required to ensure the protection of the City's NHS. The determination of the type of studies, plans and reports that are needed to support an application for development, or site alteration project requires pre-consultation with the City of London and conformance with these Environmental Management Guidelines (EMGs). In cases where the proponent or applicant is a party other than the City pre-consultation will involve the preparation of the study Terms of Reference (ToR) by the proponent/applicant through engagement with City staff, including the Ecologist Planner.

The City of London's Development Application Approval Process includes mandatory pre-consultation through the submission of an Initial Proposal Report (IPR) followed by a Proposal Review Meeting. A depiction of the Environmental and Development / Infrastructure Process Timeline including where IPR stage occurs in the process can be found in **Appendix A**.

One of the key components of the Proposal Review Meeting is the identification of the studies required for a complete application. The information and level of detail required for the IPR submission is outlined in the City of London's Initial Proposal Report Guidelines (2008) as updated from time to time.

An environmental study will often be coordinated with, and draw on information from, other inter-related technical studies that may or may not include: hydrogeological, hydrological/stormwater management, geotechnical, noise and vibration, air quality, etc.

2.2 Environmental Study Scoping

Following the determination of the type of environmental study required, scoping of the study requirements must be completed. Study scoping ensures that the proponent, the City of London, relevant agencies, and the applicable City Advisory Committees agree to the required investigations, assessments and documentation.

Environmental study scoping shall include the following:

- **Preconsultation** to determine the type of study required
- Completion of the **Environmental Study Scoping Checklist (ESSC) (See Appendix B)**
- An environmental study **scoping meeting**
- **Finalizing the environmental study scope** and ESSC Checklist.

The following outlines the general requirements for Environmental Study Scoping.

2.2.1 Environmental Study Scoping Checklist (EESC) / Terms of Reference

The completion of the ESSC is the first step in determining the scope of the environmental study, whether it is the Natural Environment component of an Environmental Assessment (EA) for an infrastructure project, Subject Land Status Report (SLSR) or an Environmental Impact Study (EIS) for a land development application. The ESSC constitutes the Terms of Reference (ToR) for the study and is referred to as the ESSC hereafter.

The proponent and/or their consultant is required to complete the ESSC as a draft for submission to the City of London.

Appendix B provides a template for the ESSC.

2.2.2 SLSR and EIS Study Scoping Meeting

The proponent for an environmental study must prepare and submit an environmental study scoping letter that includes a brief summary of the project, identifies the study area, provides the draft ESSC and a request to the City of London to convene an environmental study scoping meeting (scoping meeting). The environmental study scoping letter should be circulated to the Technical Review Team (TRT) prior to the scoping meeting. The intent of the scoping meeting is to review, discuss and agree to the ESSC for the environmental study to the satisfaction of the City.

The scoping meeting should be held with the proponent and the Technical Review Team (TRT). Typically the TRT will include a City Ecologist Planner and the City's Planner or Project Manager for the file, a representative from the local conservation authority, a representative from the City's applicable City Advisory Committees, and, where applicable, a First Nations community representative. Other TRT members may include representatives from the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF), the Ministry of Environment, Conservation and Parks (MECP), or other agencies.

During the scoping meeting the attendees will discuss comments and review the draft ESSC. The limits of the study area, the scope of the study investigations, the required evaluations and assessments, considerations for avoidance, mitigation and compensation, and required documentation and coordination with other studies/ disciplines, where required, shall be discussed and agreed to. The TRT is to provide comments on the draft ESSC.

The City of London may request a site visit, including TRT members, as part of the scoping process if it is determined that a site visit would inform the study scoping.

2.2.3 ESSC Approval

Once all comments regarding the draft ESSC have been received by the proponent, the ESSC shall be finalized and sent to the City of London for approval. The City of London will then send written (e-mail or letter) approval and finalized copy of the ESSC to the proponent and the scoping meeting attendees.

The final ESSC will form the basis for the Environmental Study scope. The proponent and their consultant(s) may then proceed to conduct the required investigations.

In cases where field investigations are time-sensitive, the proponent may choose to initiate investigations prior to finalization of the ESSC. However, conducting investigations prior to ESSC finalization is done at the proponent's risk should the investigations conducted not meet the finalized ESSC requirements.

2.3 Background Information Review & Field Investigations

While the level of effort required to undertake a SLSR and/or EIS may vary significantly in level of effort and detail, they both required a background information review and field investigations.

A comprehensive background review of existing reports, atlases, information centers, databases, etc. is an important first step in establishing an understanding of the environmental conditions of a project site. Agency, First Nations, stakeholder and environmental organization consultation and / or engagement is an integral part of the background review and should include information requests for the study. Further details regarding background review requirements are provided in the City of London's **Data Collection Standards** found in **Appendix C**.

In some cases, field investigations may not be required if recent investigations have been completed to an appropriate level of detail (as outlined in the City of London's **Data Collection Standards** found in **Appendix C**), or if there are no natural heritage features within or adjacent to the study area. In such cases a site visit to confirm the absence of features and other conditions requiring assessment should be completed. Further details regarding field investigation requirements are provided in the City of London's **Data Collection Standards** found in **Appendix C**.

2.4 Subject Lands Status Reports (SLSR)

Consistent with **The London Plan** policies 1425 to 1428, a SLSR shall provide an assessment of natural features and areas on the subject lands including, but not limited to:

- those areas included in the Green Space or Environmental Review (ER) Place Types on Map 1 (**The London Plan**)
- a component of the NHS identified or delineated on Map 5 (**The London Plan**), or,
- an unmapped feature identified through the scoping process.

The objective is to inventory, evaluate, assess the significance of, delineate boundaries of, and make recommendations for an appropriate land use designation of the natural heritage features and functions in question.

An SLSR must be scoped with the City and in consultation with relevant agencies. The SLSR shall address all of the items identified in the final site-specific ESSC.

Notably, the matters to be addressed in a SLSR may be addressed as part of the EIS. In these cases, a Draft EIS that addresses these items is to be submitted for review and confirmed by the City, in consultation with relevant agencies, prior to completing the balance of the EIS.

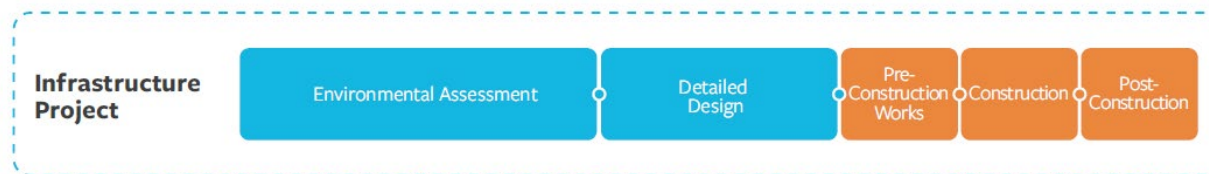
2.5 Environmental Assessment for Infrastructure Projects

As per policies set out in **The London Plan**, new infrastructure should generally not be located within the NHS, but new or infrastructure upgrades / expansions may be permitted within the NHS where it is clearly demonstrated through an EA process under the *Environmental Assessment Act*, that it is the preferred alternative for the location of the infrastructure.

In addition, as per policies set out in **The London Plan**, where new or expansions to existing infrastructure is proposed, an EIS is required as part of the EA process. The EIS shall (a) confirm no significant features are anticipated to be impacted such that they lose their significance and (b) further assess other potential impacts, identify mitigation measures, and determine appropriate compensatory mitigation, if required. Any alternative where the impacts of the proposed works as identified in the EIS would result in the loss of the ecological features or functions of the component of the NHS affected by the proposed works, such that the natural heritage feature would no longer be determined to be significant, shall not be permitted.

The Natural Environment and EIS component of an EA are to be scoped and completed in accordance with these EMGs.

Figure 2.1: Environmental Process Stages for Infrastructure Projects



2.6 Environmental Impact Studies

2.6.1 The Purpose of an Environmental Impact Study (EIS)

EISs are required where development or site alteration is proposed within or adjacent to components of the City of London’s NHS. The purpose of an EIS is to demonstrate that there will be no net negative impacts to the NHS’ features and functions as a result of the proposed development or project works. This is to be achieved through environmental investigations of the NHS components and the adjacent lands, typically completed as part of the Draft Plan approval process. An EIS will contain recommendations for avoidance of impacts and mitigation of unavoidable impacts, (including environmental management strategies, monitoring requirements and / or other measures to protect NHS features and functions before, during and following construction). In many cases, an EIS will be completed in conjunction with complimentary studies (e.g., hydrogeological assessment), and the results of each report will inform the other.

An EIS must be completed to the City’s satisfaction in accordance with **The London Plan** policies, provincial policies, and in consultation with the relevant public agencies prior to the approval of planning and development applications.

2.6.2 The Requirement for an EIS

When is an EIS Required?

EISs are typically required for development and infrastructure projects that are proposed wholly or partially within or adjacent to the NHS.

Table 2.1 identifies the NHS component types and the extent of adjacent lands to those components whose presence typically trigger an EIS. Most of these components are delineated on Map 5 and Map 1 of **The London Plan**. However, the City may require the EIS to include additional lands if (a) environmental study scoping process (as outlined in Section 2.2) identifies one or more previously unmapped natural heritage features for assessment or (b) to ensure the protection of identified natural heritage features and / or functions based on site-specific conditions and / or the proposed land uses.

Table 2.1. Areas Requiring Environmental Study

Natural Heritage System (NHS) Components*	Trigger Distance Requiring an SLSR/EIS and Area of Adjacent Lands
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fish Habitat • Habitat of Endangered and Threatened Species • Locations of Endangered and Threatened Species • Provincially Significant Wetlands (PSW) 	Within 120 metres

Natural Heritage System (NHS) Components*	Trigger Distance Requiring an SLSR/EIS and Area of Adjacent Lands
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unevaluated Wetlands • Significant Woodlands • Significant Valleylands and Valleylands • Significant Wildlife Habitat • Significant Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest (ANSI) • Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs) • Upland Corridors 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Woodlands • Significant groundwater recharge areas, wellhead protection areas and highly vulnerable aquifers • Special Concern Species • Upland Corridors • Wetlands 	Within 30 metres
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Environmental Review (ER) lands 	Within a distance appropriate to the specific components of the NHS contained on the lands

* London Plan 1434_. See Table 13.

Opportunities to Minimize EIS Requirements

It is possible that an EIS may not be a development application requirement for lands that contain NHS components and / or Adjacent Lands. The conditions under which a full EIS (including, but not limited to, seasonal surveys and details site assessments) is waived, requires the implementation of an ecological buffer to a Natural Heritage Feature that meets or exceeds the City’s minimum buffer requirements as shown in **Table 5.2** of these EMGs and any additional mitigation requirements as stipulated by the City (e.g. fencing without gates). A focused EIS that describes the site, outlines the limits of the feature(s) and function(s) and discusses restoration and enhancements and their implementation will continue to be a requirement of approval. Ultimately, the waiver of the EIS requirement will be at the discretion of the City of London.

2.6.3 Focused EIS

The Focused EIS process and report requirements offer a scope that meet the policy and application requirements in an abbreviated submission. The timing of a focused EIS will align with the approvals process, and would typically be submitted with focused design studies and/or engineering drawings. Ecological buffers to any natural heritage features must meet or exceed the City’s minimum buffer requirements as shown in **Table 5.2** for the most sensitive natural heritage features (i.e. 30 m) and include any additional mitigation requirements as stipulated by the City (e.g. fencing without gates). The focused EIS submission will describe the site, outline the limits of the feature(s) and function(s) and provide discussion on the restoration and enhancements and their implementation. Mapping illustrating the site, features and proposed buffers is a requirement. This plan and the associated mapping will be discussed during an EIS scoping meeting prior to waiving the requirements of the full-EIS and associated studies. All provincial and federal legislative requirements are still applicable.

2.6.4 Overview of EIS Process

The EIS process is generally depicted in **Figure 2.2** below, and involves the following steps regardless of scope:

1. **EIS Scoping** – Study scoping should be completed before field investigations are initiated. EIS scoping shall follow the process and requirements as outlined in **Section 2.2** of these guidelines, including the completion of the ESSC (**Section 2.2.1**). If determined as a requirement during study scoping, a site visit may be included as part of this process.
2. **Background Review & Information Requests** - The proponent must complete a comprehensive review of background information to form the basis for a description of existing conditions, as outlined in **Section 2.3**. The background review should follow the City of London’s Data Collection Standards found in **Appendix C**.
3. **Field Investigations** –Field investigations are to be completed at the appropriate times and frequencies, and include appropriate locations, in accordance with the approved ESSC. Field investigations must be completed in compliance with the City of London’s Data Collection Standards found in **Appendix C**. Dates of investigations, names of investigators, conditions at the time of investigations, any variance of methods, data sheets, and photographs, should all be recorded at the time of investigations. Quality assurance and quality control measures to verify the accuracy of the data collected should be implemented as part of the proponent’s (or their consultant’s) internal EIS review process.
4. **Evaluation of Significance** – The evaluation of significance should be conducted for natural heritage features within the study area in accordance with the applicable federal, provincial and City of London policies. The City of London evaluation criteria, as outlined in **Section 3**, should be applied to unevaluated vegetation patches and other features not previously evaluated as appropriate. The evaluation criteria to be applied to a specific feature or subject lands should be identified in the ESSC. In instances where a Woodland Evaluation is appropriate, the evaluation shall be completed in the Woodland Evaluation Form found in **Appendix D**. However, if during the course of investigations it becomes evident that other evaluation criteria are appropriate, then they shall also be applied.
5. **Impact & Net Effects Assessment** – The impact assessment for any project should identify the potential impacts that may be generated from the design and layout, the construction, and the operations of the project and / or the post-construction conditions. The proponent should identify any existing impacts to study area natural heritage features prior to project initiation (as part of existing conditions), and the potential long-term and short-term impacts (e.g., construction related) of the project. For each potential impact, possible avoidance, mitigation and/or compensation measures shall be proposed and discussed. For any proposed development or works adjacent to a Natural Heritage Feature, ecological buffers (see **Section 5**) shall be applied where as required (see **Table 5.2**) as part of the mitigation measures. The net effects of the project should then be assessed based on the anticipated net impacts after avoidance, mitigation and or compensation measures are implemented as recommended. If the project is assessed to result in a significant net negative effect, then the proponent should include additional mitigation and/or compensation measures, or re-work the proposed project plan and / or design to minimize or avoid such effects. The objective for any EIS is to achieve no net negative impact, or a net environmental benefit.

The MNRF’s **Natural Heritage Reference Manual (2010a)** provides a “Sample Checklist for Use in Assessing Impacts of Development” which can be referred to, however the proponent must consider of development activities and potential impacts on a site specific basis as outlined in the Net Effects Table Template is provided in **Appendix E**.

6. **Environmental Management Recommendations** – The environmental management recommendations for a proposed development or project is the primary “deliverable” of an EIS. Recommendations should be developed based on the avoidance, mitigation and compensation

measures identified in the impact assessment and net effects assessment. An important mitigation measure is recommending appropriate ecological buffers (**Section 5**). Another important mitigation measure is the identification of appropriate pre-, during and post-construction/ post-development monitoring. The recommendations for monitoring should outline the monitoring objectives, timeframe and protocols for each monitoring component. The EIS should also indicate if and how net environmental benefit will be achieved through the implementation of these recommendations.

7. **EIS Report Submission** – The proponent, or their consultant, is to submit the EIS report to the City of London for review and comments. The EIS report and its appendices should be submitted in electronic format to the City’s Project File Handler.
8. **EIS Report Review & Approval** – Once received the City of London will distribute copies of the EIS report to the TRT for their review and comments. All comments from the TRT will be sent to the City of London for consideration and forwarding to the proponent and their consultant. The City may decide to:
 - **Approve the EIS** – the City may approve the EIS with no required revisions, or with minor revisions
 - **Return the EIS for revisions** – the City may return the EIS report for revisions based on the comments received from the TRT
 - **Reject the EIS** – the City may reject the EIS based on non-conformance with **The London Plan** policies, or based on the inadequacies of the EIS report itself

The final acceptance of an EIS report is to be provided in written correspondence (e-mail or letter) to the proponent.

Figure 2.2: The Subject Land Status Report and EIS Approval Process Steps.



Further details and the documentation requirements for the above steps are outlined in **Section 2.6.5**.

2.6.5 EIS Report Requirements

The following section outlines the required format and minimum standards for an EIS.

An EIS report for submission to the City of London shall include the following components and sections:

- Title Page
- Executive Summary
- Authors’ Signature Page
- Table of Contents
- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Physical Environment
- 3.0 Natural Environment
 - 3.1 Aquatic Habitat & Species

- 3.2 Wetlands
- 3.3 Terrestrial Habitat & Species
- 4.0 Evaluation of Significance
- 5.0 Proposed Development or Works
- 6.0 Impact & Net Effects Assessment
- 7.0 Avoidance, Mitigation & Compensation
- 8.0 Environmental Management Recommendations
- 9.0 Conclusions
- 10.0 References
- Appendices

Additional subsections to the above sections maybe required based on the scope and complexity of the site and / or the proposal. Further details regarding the required content for the above report components and sections provided below.

2.6.6 Report Content

2.6.6.1 Title Page & Pre-Report Body Components

Title Page - The EIS Title Page should provide basic information for the EIS report including the following:

- Project name and study type (i.e., EIS)
- Any relevant File Reference numbers
- The proponent’s company name, address, and primary contact name
- The consultant’s company name, address, and primary contact name
- The City of London department to which the report is being submitted
- The date of report submission

Executive Summary- The Executive Summary for the EIS report should provide a brief summary of the report including the purpose of the EIS, the study area location, study scoping information, field investigations completed, study findings, identification of significant natural heritage features, summary of potential impacts and net effects, and a summary of the environmental management recommendations. The Executive Summary should be 1-4 pages in length.

Authors’ Signature Page - A page with the names, signatures and qualifications of the principal authors of the EIS report should be provided. The names, signatures and qualifications of the senior reviewers should also be provided.

Table of Contents - A Table of Contents with page references should be provided for the EIS report. This should also include a List of Figures, List of Tables, and List of Appendices.

2.6.6.2 Introduction

The Introduction of the EIS report may stand as one complete section or it may be separated into several sub-sections, at the author’s discretion. Regardless, the Introduction should include the following information:

Introductory Statement – The Introduction should state the purpose of the EIS report, and identify the proponent. Since most EIS reports are technical documents supporting a larger study or an application, the Introduction should reference the study or application that the EIS is supporting.

Background – The Introduction should provide some background regarding the project and any planning or studies for the subject lands that preceded the EIS.

Study Area – The study area for the EIS should be clearly identified with the address (or other municipal reference numbers), the area of the subject lands, and identification of any pertinent reference points (e.g., watercourses, major streets or roads, railways, etc.). A Study Area Figure delineating the study area boundaries and showing local streets/roads, watercourses, buildings/structures over a recent aerial photograph base must be included. A secondary figure, should also delineate the natural heritage features from Map 5 of *The London Plan*.

Policy Context – The policy context for the EIS should be identified in the Introduction. This should include the trigger for the EIS and the relevant policies in *The London Plan* that apply to the project/applications. Any relevant federal and or provincial legislation and policies should also be identified.

EIS Scope – A subsection or paragraph should be provided in the Introduction that summarizes the EIS scoping process and some of the key aspects of the study scope. The final ESSC should be referenced and should be provided in the Appendices of the report.

Agencies, First Nations and Stakeholders Consultation – Consultation with government agencies, conservation authorities, First Nations communities, and stakeholders should be identified and referenced as part of the Introduction. Any relevant correspondence and consultation documentation should be provided in the Appendices.

2.6.6.3 *Physical Environment*

The physical environment provides key context for the natural heritage features on the landscape and on a particular project site because of the direct interrelationship between the physical and natural environment. The description of the physical environment is, therefore, an important part of the EIS report. The physical environment section of the EIS should include information on the following:

Soils and geology – Soils and the underlying geology of the study area and surrounding landscape should be described in sufficient detail as to provide context for the ecological communities and ecosystems of the study area and adjacent lands. If a soils or geotechnical investigation has been undertaken for the project, its findings should be summarized in this section.

- The Canadian System of Soil Classification (1978) should be used to classify and describe the study area soils.
- Dreimanis (1964a; 1964b) “Pleistocene geology of the St. Thomas area (west half & east half respectively)”.
- Additional references for geology include: <https://data.ontario.ca/dataset/surficial-geology-of-southern-ontario> and for north London which is a map of surficial geology of southern Ontario that can be viewed in Google Earth; and,
- Sardo and Vagners (1975) which accompanies the Dreimanis reports, but is for north London.

Surface water and drainage – The surface water and drainage patterns within and adjacent to a study area determine the extent and characteristics of aquatic habitat features, wetlands and terrestrial vegetation communities. The watershed, sub watershed, surface water features (water bodies and watercourses) and drainage patterns for the study area and adjacent lands should be described in this section of the EIS report.

A Surface Water & Drainage Figure showing all watercourses, water bodies, wetlands, and drainage patterns should be provided for the study area, as applicable. If a surface water or storm water management investigation has been completed for the project the findings with regard to existing conditions should be summarized in this section of the report.

Hydrogeology – The hydrogeology of a study area and adjacent lands is often an important determinant of the area’s aquatic, wetland and / or terrestrial features and their functions. The existing hydrogeology for the study area should be described in this section, particularly as it relates to natural heritage features that depend on groundwater discharge and the depth of the shallow water table. If a hydrogeological study has been conducted for the project or as part of previous works in the area, the findings related to existing conditions should be summarized in this section of the report.

2.6.6.4 Natural Environment

As noted above, the existing condition for the natural environment section of the EIS should be divided into four (4) main disciplines: (1) aquatic habitat and species, (2) wetlands and species, and (3) terrestrial habitat and species, and (4) animal movement corridors and ecological linkages. Each of these sections may be further subdivided depending on the complexity of the study area features and the investigations required by the ESSC.

For each discipline within a subsection of the Natural Environment section the following should be included:

Background Information – a summary of information obtained from the background review and information requests should be included to provide a baseline understanding of the features. Previous studies and reports should be referenced and any data or information of particular interest to the study should be highlighted.

Methods – the methods used for the investigations for each discipline should be detailed with reference to standard protocols used. The City of London’s **Data Collection Standards** found in **Appendix C** provide the recommended protocols for ecological investigations. The date and time of investigations should be provided, in Table format along with the names of field staff who conducted the surveys. Any variance with standard protocols should also be noted in this section.

Results and Discussion – the results of the field investigations should be presented in an organized manner by feature or area. The discussion should include a comparison of findings from previous relevant studies with those of the current study, where applicable. Summary tables with metrics relevant to the discipline should be used wherever possible. For large data sets, spreadsheets should be included in the **Appendices** with summary tables included in the text where needed.

The following provides an outline of the four main disciplines to be addressed in the EIS and the possible sub-disciplines to be included within each main discipline. For the main disciplines, if the feature is not present the heading should be retained in the report with a single sentence stating that no features are present within the study area or adjacent lands (e.g., No aquatic habitat is present within the study area or adjacent lands). For sub disciplines, only those for which investigations were conducted should be included.

Aquatic Habitat and Species	Terrestrial Habitat and Species
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fish & Fish Habitat • Benthic Invertebrates • Mussels • Water Chemistry & Physical Attributes • Vegetation Communities & Plant Species • Breeding Birds • Other Birds including Waterfowl • Amphibians • Reptiles • Butterflies & Dragonflies / Damselflies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vegetation Communities & Plant Species • Breeding Birds • Raptors, Crepuscular Species, Colonial-Nesters and other Birds • Amphibians • Reptiles • Butterflies & Dragonflies/ Damselflies • Terrestrial Crayfish • Mammals (e.g., Bat Habitat & Bats, Deer Congregation Areas)

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Terrestrial Crayfish • Mammals <p>Wetlands</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PSWs • Wetlands • Unevaluated Wetlands 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seeps and Springs <p>Animal Movement Corridors and Ecological Linkages</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aquatic / Lowland • Terrestrial / Upland
---	---

At a minimum the following figures should be included in the EIS or Natural Environment section of the EA report:

- Field Investigations – showing the locations of the field investigations completed;
- Aquatic Habitat – showing watercourses, spawning habitat, habitat characteristics, barriers to fish passage, etc.; and,
- Vegetation Communities – showing the delineation of Ecological Land Classification (ELC; as per Lee *et al.*, 1998) communities.

Other figures may include:

- Breeding Bird and Raptor Habitat – showing suitable habitat, nest locations, etc.
- Amphibian and Reptile Habitat – showing breeding areas, hibernacula, etc.
- Plant species – showing location(s) of one or more rare species
- Notably, for species whose location data is considered sensitive, mapping should be provided to the City separately in a map clearly labelled as confidential and for internal use only.

2.6.6.5 Evaluation of Significance

The Evaluation of Significance section of the EIS should identify previously evaluated and recognized or identified features and species by jurisdiction: federal, provincial and local. For those features or species not previously evaluated or identified, this section should present the evaluation and the recommended designation. The following lists some of the potential features or categories that may apply for each jurisdiction:

- **Federal**
 - *Fish Habitat as defined under the Fisheries Act*
 - *Species at Risk (SAR) as listed under the Species at Risk Act*
- **Provincial**
 - *Provincially Significant Wetlands (PSWs)* – for wetland evaluations the Ontario Wetland Evaluation System (OWES) shall be used by a certified wetland evaluator. Once completed the wetland evaluation shall be submitted to the MNRF and the City of London. A summary of the evaluation should be included in this section of the EIS, and a copy of the evaluation should be provided in the Appendices. See **The London Plan** policies 1330_ to 1336_.
 - *Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest (ANSIs)* – as identified by the Province of Ontario (MNRF). See **The London Plan** policies 1356_ to 1360_.
 - *Significant Woodlands* – see **The London Plan** policies 1337_ to 1342_ and the City of London’s Woodland Evaluation Criteria in **Section 3.1.2**
 - *Species at Risk (SAR) as listed under the Endangered Species Act*
- **City of London and local Conservation Authorities**
 - *Significant Woodlands* – see above

- *Woodlands (non-significant)* – see **The London Plan** policy 1343_.
- *ESAs and Potential ESAs*- See **The London Plan** policies 1367_ to 1371_ and **Section 3.1.2 for the City’s Guidelines for the Evaluation of Environmentally Significant Areas**
- *Significant Wildlife Habitat* – for habitats not already evaluated, the proponent’s Ecologist should complete a Significant Wildlife Habitat Assessment in accordance with the MNR’s Significant Wildlife Habitat Technical Guide (2000) and Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E (2015), or subsequent updates to these documents. These are provincial criteria that are approved at the municipal level. **The London Plan** policies 1352_ to 1355_ shall also be applied.
- *Significant Valleylands* – valleylands not already identified or evaluated should be evaluated in accordance with **The London Plan** policies 1347_ to 1350_.
- *Wetlands and Unevaluated Wetlands* – see **The London Plan** policies 1330_ to 1336_.
- *Upland Corridors* see **The London Plan** policies 1372_ to 1377_.

Further details regarding the evaluation of significance is provided in **Section 3**.

2.6.6.6 *Proposed Development or Works*

In this section of the EIS report the proposed development or project works should be summarized in a manner that describes all aspects and stages of the project that may affect natural heritage features and their functions. The EIS should be based on, at a minimum, the Preliminary Design for the project. This enables the recommendations from the EIS to be incorporated into the Detailed Design for the project.

It is expected that the Preliminary Design presented in the EIS will be a product of an iterative process wherein the design has taken into consideration avoidance and mitigation recommendations provided by the proponent’s Ecologists for the project. Documentation of this iterative process should be provided where applicable.

The following information should be included in the description of the proposed development or works:

- A description of the project layout and design
- Changes to surface water drainage and site grading which may include predevelopment, post-development and interim variations when works are adjacent to natural areas
- An outline of project staging and timing
- Details regarding construction relating to potential impacts to natural heritage, including any proposed de-watering plans that depict preferred zones where discharge should be directed and potential impacts from dewatering activities (e.g., cutting off groundwater baseflow from potential receptors).
- Proposed protection measures, including erosion and sediment control (ESC) measures in accordance with the City of London’s *Design Specifications & Requirements Manual* (City of London, 2019)
- Any details regarding post-construction operations or maintenance

The proposed layout and design shall be shown on a figure as an overlay depicting the site and plan over a recent air photo, and include the natural heritage features and ELC communities delineated. This figure shall recommend areas for protection with their associated recommended buffers and / or setbacks.

Further Preliminary Design and Detailed Design drawings and supporting documentation can be provided in the Appendices.

2.6.6.7 *Impact and Net Effects Assessment*

The Impact and Net Effects Assessment section of the report is critical in determining whether a project can meet the test of “no net negative impact” or “net environmental benefit”. The following should be

documented in this section of the EIS and may each form a subsection in the Impact and Net Effects Assessment section:

Existing Impacts – The report should identify any impacts from previous or existing land uses or activities that have affected the natural heritage features of the study area. This provides a baseline for comparison with potential project related impacts.

Direct Impacts – The potential direct impacts of a project should be identified and described based on the proposed development plan. A figure showing the proposed project overlaid on the natural heritage features for the study area should be provided with an indication of any areas where direct impacts are anticipated.

Indirect Impacts – Many indirect impacts are associated with the during or post-construction stages of land development or an infrastructure project. Generally, during-construction impacts are temporary in nature and preventable / manageable through proper construction practices, site inspections, and other standard mitigation measures.

For each of the above categories of impact, the source of the impact, the feature that may be affected, possible avoidance, mitigation and / or compensation measures where appropriate, and the resulting net effects should be described in detail. A summary of the impact assessment and net effects should be provided in a Net Effects Assessment Table. **Appendix E** provides a table template for the assessment of net effects, to be used in any EIS submitted to the City of London.

Net environmental impacts are considered to be those impacts that remain or are residual after the recommended avoidance, mitigation and compensation measures, as applicable, have been implemented. The following criteria should be applied during the assignment of net effects.

- **No Net Effect** – Indicates no measurable impact to the identified natural heritage features and functions is anticipated.
- **Low Net Effect** – Indicates loss of habitat possessing limited habitat value, and/or loss of a portion of habitat, which will not result in long-term impact to the remaining habitat and/or reduction in associated key ecological functions is anticipated.
- **Medium Net Effects** – Indicates loss of habitat possessing moderate habitat value, and/or loss of a portion of habitat that may result in long-term impacts to the remaining habitat, and/or loss of associated key ecological functions is anticipated.
- **High Net Effects** – Indicates loss of habitat possessing significant habitat value, and/or loss of a portion of habitat that may result in long-term impacts to the remaining habitat, and/or significant loss of associated key ecological functions is anticipated.

In addition to the Net Effects Assessment, where feasible, the proponent should have consideration for effects of development that may increase or decrease in magnitude with a changing climate (e.g., increased flooding, drought, invasive species range shifts, etc.) as well as the development's contributions to greenhouse gas emissions. Any tools available from the City of London to assess climate change impacts should be used as part of the impact assessment process.

2.6.6.8 *Avoidance, Mitigation & Compensation*

While the Impact and Net Effects Assessment identifies avoidance, mitigation, and compensation measures that should be implemented, each of these will require development into detailed recommendations. This section of the EIS report should carry forward the avoidance, mitigation and compensation measures identified in the previous section and elaborate on each.

Avoidance – Avoidance of potential impacts should always be considered to be the preferred option where feasible. As noted in the Proposed Development (**Section 2.6.5.6**) avoidance of potential impacts should be considered iteratively through collaboration between the project planners, engineers and

ecologists prior to plan finalization. Consequently, this section may refer to the iterative process described in the Proposed Development Section, or it may propose additional avoidance measures for consideration.

Mitigation – Mitigation measures may take various forms and may apply to direct to indirect impacts that are short-term (e.g., may occur only during the construction phase of the project) or long-term (e.g., may occur in the post development scenario). Each of these measure should be developed and described in this section of the report.

One of the most important mitigation measure that will apply to all NHFs is the implementation of ecological buffers. The identification of appropriate ecological buffers must follow the guidance provided in **Section 5** of these Environmental Management Guidelines. In this section the application of the guidelines to the project and site-specific rationale should be provided in as much detail as possible.

Compensation – Compensation for impacts to, or removal of, a NHF is only permitted under limited and very narrowly prescribed circumstances, but may be permitted in accordance with the applicable policies. Where alternatives for avoidance and mitigation have been considered and compensation has been determined to be required for a project, the details of the compensation must be described in this section. The development of compensation plans must comply with the applicable policies and follow the guidelines provided in **Section 6** of these Environmental Management Guidelines.

2.6.6.9 *Environmental Management Recommendations*

The Environmental Management Recommendations section is the primary deliverable of the EIS. The environmental management recommendations must be clearly articulated and must be specific enough to be translated into Conditions of Draft Approval, Development Agreement and/or Subdivision Agreement for a project. The recommendations should be organized by project phase, from planning & design, through construction, to post-construction and post-development. Depending on the size and complexity of the project, the environmental management recommendations may form an Environmental Management Plan (EMP).

The following are typical components of an EMP:

- Natural Heritage Protection Areas
- Ecological Buffers
- Restoration, Enhancement and Compensation Measures/Areas
- Construction Mitigation and Monitoring Plans
- Post-Construction Monitoring
- Post-Development Monitoring

Environmental management recommendations identified during Preliminary Design that should appear on the contract drawings must be explicitly stated. Text should provide direction to include the complete EIS with the tender documents for later project stages. In instances where a detailed Construction Monitoring Plan is anticipated, the EIS should include a draft field inspection form template in the Appendices.

To effectively develop a post construction monitoring program, baseline conditions must be established through the EIS process and stations for long-term / post-construction monitoring in the protected NHS should be identified along with the recommended type(s) and frequency of monitoring. Assessing the success of the avoidance, mitigation and compensation will be determined based on various metrics.

Section 7 outlines the context and specific requirements of the EMP, and should be carefully reviewed and referenced as appropriate.

2.6.6.10 *Conclusions*

The Conclusions section of the EIS report should provide the following elements:

Summary of Key Findings – A brief summary of the key findings of the EIS report should be provided to indicate the confirmed natural heritage features and NHS within the study area, with reference to adjacent lands as needed.

Key Recommendations – Either a summary of key recommendations should be provided, or a reference to the Environmental Management Recommendations section of the report must be made. Where applicable, direction regarding the implementation of the recommendations must be stated.

Conclusion Statement – A clear statement of the conclusions of the EIS must be made as to whether the proposal has met the test of “no negative impacts on the natural features or on their ecological function: (MMAH, 2020) which can be achieved with either a no net effect or a positive net effect assuming the recommended avoidance, mitigation and / or compensation measures are implemented (as per Section 2.6.6.1). The conclusions should also state whether the project meets the intent and requirements of the environmental policies of *The London Plan*, the *Provincial Policy Statement* and any other relevant legislation or policies. A summary of the rationale for the conclusion statement must be provided to support the statement.

2.6.6.11 References, Appendices, and Figures

References – All relevant references used in the preparation of, or cited in the EIS report should be listed in a References section. References should be in alphabetical order by author. Each reference should indicate author(s), year of publication, title, and publisher. For journal articles the journal name, volume, and pages should be provided. For websites, the full website address should be provided.

Appendices – Supporting documentation as referenced in each section of the report should be provided in the Appendices section and separated by appendix title pages. The order of appendices should follow the order of reference in the sections of the report. Appendices will typically include many or all of the following:

- Environmental Study Scoping Checklist (ESSC)
- Resumes (two-page) of the study’s authors, reviewers, and field staff
- Aquatic habitat field sheets and sketches
- Aquatic species list and life history information
- Ecological Land Classification (ELC) data sheets including soil characterization
- Plant species list by ELC community type with rarity rankings
- Bird species list by survey location with rarity rankings
- Amphibian survey data sheets and species list
- Additional wildlife lists by survey locations with rarity rankings, as applicable (e.g., mammals, herpetofauna)
- Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH) data sheets
- Significant Wildlife Habitat Assessment
- Species at Risk (SAR) screening and habitat assessment
- Photographs

Figures – All figures for the EIS report should be either embedded in the body of the report and presented on the first full page following the first reference in the text to the figure, or compiled in the Appendices. All figures should be sequentially numbered and have the following:

- A recent colour aerial photograph base

- The study area boundary
- Roads/streets (labelled), utility corridors, and other “surface” infrastructure such as rail lines
- Watercourses and natural heritage features boundaries
- North arrow
- A scale
- A Legend will all symbols and shading labelled

Where appropriate, figures should be prepared at a consistent scale to facilitate comparison and cross-referencing.

DRAFT

3. Evaluation of Significance and Ecological Function

The City's NHS is a system of natural heritage features and areas and linkages intended to provide connectivity at the regional or site level and support natural processes which are necessary to maintain biological and geological diversity, natural functions, viable populations of native species, and ecosystems (The London Plan – Policy 1298). Evaluation of the significance and ecological functions of the various NHS components through the planning process informs the protection of the NHS and may lead to the addition, removal or refinement of NHS features included on City of London mapping (see Map 5 in The London Plan).

While these components are all generally protected within the broader system, the process for evaluating these components and the jurisdictional responsibility confirming their significance and enforcing the policies for their protection are not the same for all features and areas. As outlined in the *Provincial Policy Statement* and in *The London Plan*, the following applies to the City's NHS components:

- Fish habitat and the Habitat of Endangered and Threatened Species are to be assessed in accordance with the applicable federal and / or provincial regulations, policies and guidance in consultation with the appropriate federal and / or provincial agency (i.e., DFO, MECP), sometimes with technical support from the local Conservation Authority;
- Provincially Significant Wetlands (PSWs) and provincially significant Areas Of Natural And Scientific Interest (ANSIs) are identified and confirmed by the Province in accordance with provincial systems and criteria (developed by the MNRF);
- Significant Woodlands, SWH and Significant Valleylands are identified and confirmed by the City using locally-developed criteria aligned with the criteria and guidance established by the Province (i.e., MNRF), sometimes with support from the local Conservation Authority, particularly for valleylands which they typically regulate;
- As per *The London Plan* Policies 1361 and 1362, Water Resource Systems capture a range of surface and groundwater features and areas that are to be assessed in accordance with the applicable provincial regulations, policies and guidance in consultation with the appropriate provincial agency (i.e., DFO, MECP) and local Conservation Authority;
- Environmentally Significant Areas may be assessed by the proponent but are identified and confirmed by the City using locally-developed criteria, sometimes with support from the local Conservation Authority, particularly when the area overlaps with lands they regulate (e.g., wetlands, watercourses, valleylands and the related adjacent lands); and
- Upland Corridors and Naturalization Areas are identified and confirmed by the City using locally-developed criteria.

The Environmental Policies section of *The London Plan* defines and provides policy guidance for the evaluation of all the NHS components, including locally-developed criteria where applicable, and points to applicable sources of additional technical guidance at the federal, provincial and / or local (i.e., municipal and Conservation Authority) levels. This section of the EMGs provides additional guidance related to the evaluation of NHS components where the City of London and, where applicable, the local Conservation Authority, are responsible for confirming the evaluation of significance.

The specific NHS components addressed in this section of the EMGs are:

- Provincially Significant Wetlands, Wetlands and Unevaluated Wetlands
- Significant Woodlands and Woodlands
- Significant Valleylands and Valleylands

- Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH), and
- Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs)

with more detailed guidance for the criteria application provided for Significant Woodlands and ESAs based on the current science and natural heritage studies completed in the City.

The locally-developed criteria and the related guidance in this section have been developed in accordance with the *Provincial Policy Statement* with careful consideration for the local biophysical and land use planning context, and for the applicable technical and scientific literature. Notably, the *Provincial Policy Statement* states that: “*planning authorities and decision-makers may go beyond these minimum standards to address matters of importance to a specific community, unless doing so would conflict with any policy of the Provincial Policy Statement*”. It further states that for NHS components that are to be locally confirmed that: “*Criteria for determining significance for the resources ... are recommended by the Province, but municipal approaches that achieve or exceed the same objective may also be used*” (MMAH 2020).

In all cases, the proponent is expected to comply with the most current applicable policies and guidelines related to the evaluation of significance and ecological functions of NHS components in the City, including any that may be adopted following the approval of these EMGS.

3.1 Significant Woodlands and Woodlands

The objective of these guidelines is to provide a standardized and scientifically-based approach for the evaluation of woodlands that is consistent with **The London Plan** policies, the *Provincial Policy Statement*, and the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* (MNRF 2010b). This section describes the required methods for evaluating the ecological significance of all Unevaluated Vegetation Patches, woodlands and vegetation patches greater than 0.5 ha (as per **The London Plan** Policies 1337_ through 1343_, and 1383_ through 1386_).

3.1.1 Policy and Context

Policies outlined in the *Provincial Policy Statement* protect Significant Woodlands by not permitting development and site alteration within or in the lands adjacent to Significant Woodlands south and east of the Canadian Shield, unless it has been demonstrated that there will be no negative impacts on the natural features or their ecological functions. Also, development and site alteration are not permitted on adjacent lands to significant woodlands, unless it has been demonstrated that there will be no negative impacts on the natural features or their ecological functions.

According to the *Provincial Policy Statement*, woodlands are defined as: “*treed areas that provide environmental and economic benefits to both the private landowner and the general public, such as erosion prevention, hydrological and nutrient cycling, provision of clean air and the long-term storage of carbon, provision of wildlife habitat, outdoor recreational opportunities, and the sustainable harvest of a wide range of woodland products*” and “*include treed areas, woodlots, or forested areas and vary in their level of significance at the local, regional, and provincial levels*”.

Furthermore, the *Provincial Policy Statement*, considers woodlands significant when an area “*is ecologically important in terms of features such as species composition, age of trees and stand history; functionally important due to its contribution to the broader landscape because of its location, size, or due to the amount of forest cover in the planning area; or economically important due to site quality, species composition, or past management history*”. These are to be identified using criteria established by the MNRF, with the most current guidance provided in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* (MNRF 2010b).

The London Plan has built on the provincial guidance and incorporated local considerations to ensure the identification and evaluation of significance for woodland components of the City’s NHS that is aligned

with local objectives and conditions. The policy framework for the identification and evaluation of Significant Woodlands and Woodlands are outlined in **The London Plan** – Significant Woodlands and Woodlands.

Most potential Woodlands are shown as Unevaluated Vegetation Patches on Map 5 – Natural Heritage and as Environmental Review Place Type on Map 1 in **The London Plan**. However, as outlined in **The London Plan** – Policy 1216, the absence of vegetation patches from the aforementioned mapping, does not necessarily mean that additional unevaluated vegetation patches do not exist where none have been mapped. Therefore, proponents must assess the subject lands in question to screen for the presence of any additional Unevaluated Vegetation Patches and/or other vegetation patches larger than 0.5 ha.

As per the *Provincial Policy Statement* definition above, woodlands are “treed areas”. Using the Ecological Land Classification (ELC) System for Southern Ontario (Lee *et al.*, 1998), individual vegetation communities are typically delineated as discrete polygons. One or more ELC polygons can make up a woodland patch.

According to the Ecological Land Classification (ELC) System for southern Ontario (Lee *et al.*, 1998), a treed area is any community with tree cover >10%. As such, the following ELC Community Classes and Series are potential components of woodland patches:

- **FOREST** - deciduous forest (FOD), mixed forest (FOM) or coniferous forest (FOC);
- **SWAMP** - deciduous swamp (SWD), mixed swamp (SWM) or coniferous swamp (SWC);
- **BLUFF** - treed bluff (BLT);
- **TALLGRASS** - savannah (TPS), woodland (TPW);
- **CULTURAL** - cultural woodland (CUW), cultural savanna (CUS) or cultural plantation (CUP); and
- **SHRUB / THICKET** - shrub bluff (BLS), cultural thicket (CUT), and swamp thicket (SWT).

Note: In the *Middlesex Natural Heritage Study* (UTRCA, 2014), communities with shrub cover >25% may also qualify as woodland. In the ELC system shrub and thicket communities are similarly defined. Therefore, shrub and thicket communities that are contiguous with other woodland Community Classes may also be included in a woodland patch.

Other communities that contribute to the biological diversity and ecological function of woodlands include old fields (CUM), open prairies (TPO) and wetland communities (MAM, MAS, SAF, OAO, FEO, and BOG) as defined by the ELC. While these communities will not comprise entire woodland patches, they are important components and contribute to the ecological significance of the vegetation patch. As such they are included in the evaluation of significance for applicable criteria.

Evaluation criteria for woodland significance are outlined in **The London Plan**. The following sections outline the criteria with the measures to be used for the evaluation of significance and ecological function for woodlands in London.

Based on the above information, a vegetation patch is considered to have a woodland component within the City of London if tree cover is greater than 10% or shrub cover is greater than 25%. To determine if a vegetation patch meets this criteria, appropriate ecological inventory (as described in **Section 4.3**) and significant woodland evaluation (described in the following sections) methods shall be used.

The woodland evaluation review summary sheet shall be completed and included as an EIS Appendix, where appropriate. The blank summary sheet can be found in **Appendix D**.

Consistent with **The London Plan** a woodland will be considered significant if it meets either of the following evaluation scores:

- If one or more criteria meet the standard for High; or
- If five or more criteria meet the standard for Medium.

3.1.2 Significant Woodland Evaluation Criteria

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 1.

The woodland contains natural features and ecological functions that are important to the environmental quality and integrity of the NHS. These include site protection (hydrology and erosion/ slope) and landscape integrity (richness, connectivity and distribution).

Criterion 1.1. – Site Protection

Ecological Function Measure

A) Presence of hydrological features within or contiguous with the patch.

This measure relates to *Hydrological and Related Values* as outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* and the following concepts:

- a) “Waterbodies, including wetlands, often represent a relatively small percentage of the total land area, yet they can be disproportionately more valuable than other areas”, and
- b) “It is recommended that measures be taken to protect water features, wetlands and other areas of significant hydrological importance (e.g., headwaters, recharge areas, discharge areas) within natural heritage systems” (MNR 2010b).

Further, this measure relates to other concepts identified in subwatershed studies completed for the City of London to recognize the following:

- a) the linkage between protection of groundwater and vegetation on the surface;
- b) the interface between aquatic and terrestrial systems which have high biodiversity and are the focus of important ecological functions; and,
- c) the important hydrological functions of wetlands that complement and enhance those provided by woodlands.

For the purposes of this evaluation, hydrological features include the following features and/or areas:

- Groundwater discharge and recharge areas or evidence of groundwater dependent species
- Headwaters and watercourses;
 - Flood plain (as regulated by the local Conservation Authority)
 - River, stream, and ravine corridors (Valleylands) outside of flood plain regulated lands, and
- Wetlands (evaluated and unevaluated).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – One (1) or more hydrological features (as described above) located within or contiguous with the patch.
- **MEDIUM** – Within 50 m of a hydrological feature.
- **LOW** – No hydrological features present within 50 m of the patch.

B) Erosion and Slope Protection

Soil erosion may adversely affect a feature by removing nutrient rich soils, destroying vegetation, and the deposition of eroded soil material (MNRF, 1997b). As slopes increase, the erosion risk also increases; however, slopes less than 10% generally experience minimal erosion (MNRF, 1997b; MNRF, 2010b).

This measure relates to the need “to protect runoff processes, ground stability, and aquatic habitat (erosion potential) for slopes > 10%” (MNRF, 2010a).

Slopes are mapped in the Slope Stability Mapping Project (UTRCA, 1996) and can also be determined using Geographic Information System (GIS) applications such as ArcMap in combination with up-to-date contour mapping.

Additionally, this measure requires knowledge of the soil textures and types as described in the ELC Manual (Lee *et al.*, 1998) based on the Ontario Institute of Pedology (1985) and Canadian Soil Classification System (Soil Classification Working Group, 1998).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Patch present on steep slopes >25% of any soil type, OR on a remnant slope associated with other features such as moraines or remnant valley slopes no longer continuous with the river system OR on moderate to steep slopes >10% - 25% with erodible soils (silty loam, sandy loam and loam, fine to coarse sands).
- **MEDIUM** – Patch present on moderate to steep slopes > 10% - 25% with less erodible soils (heavy clay and clay, silty clay)
- **LOW** – Patch present on gentle slopes < 10% with any soil type.

Score for **Criterion 1.1** is based on the highest standard achieved between the two measures.

Criterion 1.2 – Landscape Integrity (Richness, Connectivity and Distribution)

Ecological Function Measures

A) Landscape Richness

The density of landscape fragmentation, or patchiness, as measured by the total area of all patches per unit area of land. Based on the demonstration that “*Native plant richness and flora quality are significantly related to local forest cover*” (UTRCA, 1997; Bowles and Bergsma, 1999). Further, the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* outlines the following concepts:

- a) “*Clusters of areas that span a range of topographic, soil, and moisture conditions contain a wider variety of plant species/communities, and may support a greater diversity of ecological processes*”, and,
- b) “*Where large core areas do not exist, groupings of habitat patches with potential for restoration should be included to maintain ecological function at the landscape scale*” (MNRF 2010b).

For the purpose of this evaluation, local vegetation cover is defined as percent cover of vegetation (all habitat types) within a 2 km radius circle from patch centroid. Thresholds reflect cumulative frequency distribution of patches within London (Bergsma, 2004).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** > 10% local vegetation cover
- **MEDIUM** 7 – 10% local vegetation cover
- **LOW** < 7% local vegetation cover.

B) Landscape Connectivity (linkage and distance between patches not separated by permanent cultural barriers).

This measure relates to *Proximity, Connectedness, and Naturalness and Disturbance* outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* and the following concepts:

- a) Blocks of habitat that are arranged close together limit fragmentation and are usually better than those that are located farther apart; and,
- b) Relatively undisturbed natural areas are generally more desirable than highly altered areas (MNRF 2010b).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – patches directly connected by:
 - i. waterways or riparian habitat (generally primary or secondary aquatic corridors and streams with bridges and/or underpasses: for example, Thames, Dingman, Medway, Stoney, Pottersburg, Kettle, Dodd, Sharon, Oxbow, Kelly, Stanton, Mud, Crumlin);
 - ii. Contiguous or semi-contiguous habitat.
- **MEDIUM** – patches indirectly connected by:
 - i. habitat gaps < 40 m;
 - ii. areas identified as Anti-fragmentation, Terrestrial Corridor, Big Picture Corridor (https://caroliniancanada.ca/legacy/ConservationPrograms_BigPictureMaps.html) to enhance the viability of isolated woodlands by re-connection, buffering, expanding OR to infill disturbed areas or replace abandoned fields (Riley & Mohr, 1994);
 - iii. abandoned rails, utility rights-of-way (hydro corridors, water/gas pipeline);
 - iv. Open space greenways and golf courses;
 - v. Active agriculture or pasture;
 - vi. Watercourses connected by culverts; and,
 - vii. First or second order streams that exhibit channelized morphology.
- **LOW** – patches not connected due to the presence of permanent cultural barriers:
 - i. major roads and highways with no culverts;
 - ii. urban or industrial development, large parking lots;
 - iii. infrastructure;
 - iv. dams, buried watercourses, channelized third or greater order watercourses; and,
 - v. active recreational land-uses (campground, parks with major facilities – community centres, arenas).

C) Patch Distribution (isolation & arrangement of patches / patch clusters).

This measure relates to *Proximity, Connectedness, Size and Distribution* outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* and the following concepts:

- a) Blocks of habitat that are arranged close together limit fragmentation and are usually better than those that are located farther apart; and,
- b) Large patches of natural area are more valuable than smaller patches (MNRF 2010b), although smaller habitat patches can also have value in supporting biodiversity, particularly when they are clustered (Fahrig 2020) .

Following a review of the empirical evidence in the literature, Fahrig (2020) concluded that;

The interaction or flow of organisms among patches appears to be influenced by the size of patches and the distance separating them. Patch clusters are defined as patches within 250 m of each other that are not separated by major roads, highways, or urban development.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – patch clusters with total area > 40 ha OR identified as a Big Picture Meta Core (Carolinian Canada, 2000).
- **MEDIUM** – patch clusters with total area 20 – 40 ha.
- **LOW** – patch clusters with total area < 20 ha.

Score for Criterion 1.2 based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the three standards.

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 2.

The woodland provides important ecological functions and has an age, size, site quality, and diversity of biological communities and associated species that is uncommon for the planning area.

Criterion 2.1 – Age and Site Quality

A) Community Successional Stage / Seral Age

This measure relates to *Uncommon Characteristics of Woodlands* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the concept that: “Older woodlands are particularly valuable for several reasons, including their contributions to genetic, species, and ecosystem diversity” (MNRF 2010b).

For the purpose of this evaluation, community age is determined based on definitions in the provincial ELC for Southern Ontario (Lee *et. al.*, 1998). Seral age reflects the composition of the plant community (especially trees) with respect to light tolerance and moisture conditions). Generally, mature or advanced seral stage community types are under-represented in the London Subwatershed (Bowles, 1995), Middlesex County (UTRCA, 2003) and Oxford County (UTRCA, 1997).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – patch contains one (1) or more mature or older growth communities
- **MEDIUM** – patch contains one (1) or more mid-aged communities
- **LOW** – patch contains only pioneer to young communities

B) Mean Coefficient of Conservatism (MCC) of communities or whole patch

This measure relates to *Species Rarity and Uncommon Characteristics of Woodlands* as outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* and the following concepts:

- a) In general, habitats that contain rare species are more valuable than those that do not; and,
- b) Woodlands that are uncommon in terms of species composition should be protected (MNRF 2010b).

The MCC can provide useful information on the susceptibility of communities to adverse anthropogenic effects (Francis *et al.*, 2000; Catling, 2013). The MCC thresholds identified below have been based on the Floristic Quality Assessment System for Southern Ontario (Oldham *et al.*, 1995), analysis of distribution in the London subwatershed area (Bowles and Bergsma, 1999), results of the Middlesex Natural Heritage Study (UTRCA, 2014), and Oxford County Terrestrial Ecosystem Study (UTRCA, 1997).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – one (1) or more vegetation community with an MCC ≥ 4.6 ; OR MCC of patch > 4.5
- **MEDIUM** – one (1) or more vegetation community with an MCC 4.2 – 4.5; OR MCC of patch ≥ 4.0 – 4.5
- **LOW** – all vegetation communities with an MCC < 4.2 ; OR MCC of patch < 4.0 .

Score for **Criterion 2.1** based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the two standards.

Criterion 2.2 – Size and Shape

A) Patch Size

This measure relates to *Size* as described in Natural Heritage Reference Manual, and the concept that “*large patches of natural area are more valuable than smaller patches*” (MNRF 2010b).

Patch size is generally positively correlated with ecological function. Larger patches can provide functions that smaller patches cannot such as habitat for area-sensitive species, , reduced forest edge/increased forest interior, and increased resiliency from human disturbance (MNRF, 2010b).

The following thresholds have been derived from a cumulative frequency curve distribution for vegetation patches within the City of London (Bergsma, 2004).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** Patch > 9.0 ha in size OR patch contains a woodland >4 ha.
- **MEDIUM** Patch 2.0 – 9.0 ha in size OR patch contains a woodland 2-4 ha.
- **LOW** Patch < 2.0 ha in size.

B) Patch Shape and Presence of Interior

Patch shape influences the amount of edge and interior habitat, and thus can influence resilience, disturbance, and species-specific habitat requirements (as described above) (MNRF, 2010a). Edge habitat, specifically for woodlands, has increased across southern Ontario with increased fragmentation; and subsequently the area of forest interior has decreased.

This measure relates to *Shape* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) The shape of natural heritage areas affects their value as wildlife habitat and their resilience to disturbance effects; and,
- b) Round or block-shaped patches contain less edge per unit of area than long, narrow patches.

As edge effects can extend into woodlands (Environment Canada, 2013), the interior area for a patch is calculated based on a 100 m distance from the interior of the edge habitat (MNRF, 2010b). The locally-specific thresholds for perimeter:area ratios listed below have been based on analysis of London subwatershed studies patches and calculation of perimeter to area ratios (Bergsma, 2004).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** Patch contains interior habitat that is more than 100 m from the edge OR has a Perimeter: Area ratio <1.5 m/m².
- **MEDIUM** Patch contains no interior habitat but has a Perimeter:Area ratio 1.5 – 3.0

m/m².

- **LOW** Patch contains no interior and has a Perimeter:Area ratio > 3.0 m/m²

C) Bird Species

This measure relates to *Species Diversity and Rarity* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) Areas that contain a high diversity of native plant and animal species are generally more important than areas that contain a lower diversity of species; and,
- b) In general, habitats that contain rare species are more valuable than habitats that do not (MNRF 2010b).

Birds can be indicators of habitat quality and the degree of forest fragmentation. The following criteria rankings have been developed based on the guidance from the: Significant Wildlife Habitat Ecoregion 7E Criteria Schedules (MNRF, 2015a) for "Habitat of Species of Conservation Concern, Special Concern and Rare Species" and the Avian Conservation Assessment Database (Partners in Flight, 2020) for "Regional Concern" species for the Lower Great Lakes/St. Lawrence Plain Bird Conservation Region.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** Patch provides breeding habitat for any three (3) or more bird species of conservation concern, including provincially rare bird species (MNRF, 2015a) or species of regional concern (Partners in Flight, 2020).
- **MEDIUM** Patch provides breeding habitat for one (1) or two (2) bird species of conservation concern, including provincially rare bird species (MNRF, 2015a) or species of regional concern (Partners in Flight, 2020).
- **LOW** Patch does not provide breeding habitat any bird species of conservation concern, including provincially rare bird species (MNRF, 2015a) or species of regional concern (Partners in Flight, 2020).

Score for Criterion 2.2 based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the three standards
--

Criterion 2.3 Diversity of Communities, Landforms and Associated Species

A) ELC Community Diversity

This measure relates to *Habitat Diversity, Complexity, and Uncommon Characteristics of Woodlands* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) Natural areas (or clusters of areas) that span a range of topographic, soil and moisture conditions tend to contain a wider variety of plant species and plant communities, and may also support a greater diversity of ecological processes;
- b) Older woodlands are particularly valuable for several reasons, including their contributions to genetic, species, and ecosystem diversity; and,
- c) Woodlands that are uncommon in terms of species composition, cover type, age, or structure should be protected.

Native plant species diversity is related mainly to the number of communities in the patch, but also to patch area and landscape richness (UTRCA, 1997; MNRF, 2010b).

The following thresholds were developed based on an analysis of all vegetation communities (including cultural) identified at the Community Series level in the City of London digital GIS layer. Thresholds were derived from cumulative frequency distribution of London patches for a total of

23 Community Series categories (Bergsma, 2004). Assessments are to consider all Community Series types within a woodland patch, including cultural communities.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Patch contains 6 or more ELC Community Series
- **MEDIUM** – Patch contains 3-5 ELC Community Series
- **LOW** – Patch contains 1-2 ELC Community Series

B) Community and Topographic Diversity (variation and heterogeneity)

This measure relates to *Habitat Diversity* and *Complexity* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the concept that: “*natural areas (or clusters of areas) that span a range of topographic, soil and moisture conditions tend to contain a wider variety of plant species and plant communities, and may also support a greater diversity of ecological processes*” (MNRF 2010b).

This is applied to all communities as defined by this study and based on ELC Community tables (Lee *et. al.*, 1998) and topographic feature description. The seven (7) topographic feature categories for the City of London are as follows: riverine, bottomland, terrace, valley slope, tableland, rolling upland, bluff.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Patch contains three (3) or more Ecosites in one (1) Community Series OR four (4) or more Vegetation Types OR three (3) or more topographic features (e.g. tableland, rolling upland, valley slope, terrace, bottomland).
- **MEDIUM** – Patch contains two (2) or more Ecosites in one Community Series OR by three (3) Vegetation Types OR two (2) topographic features, or one (1) Vegetation Type with inclusions or complexes.
- **LOW** – Patch relatively homogenous; one (1) Ecosite OR one (1) to two (2) Vegetation Types on one (1) topographic feature.

C) Diversity (species and individuals) and Critical Habitat Components for Amphibians

This measure relates to *Species Diversity* and *Rarity* as described in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the concept that: “*areas that contain a high diversity of plant and animal species are generally more important than areas that contain a lower diversity of species*”.

Amphibians are indicators of healthy woodlands with well-functioning processes (MNRF, 2000b; MNRF, 2010b).

This measure is applied at the patch level based on the presence of amphibians and/or important habitat components including the following:

- 1) shallow water that remains wet for the breeding season (presence of vernal pools);
- 2) emergent and submergent aquatic vegetation (presence of aquatic ELC community types);
- 3) presence of instream logs and shoreline shrubs (fish habitat);
- 4) closed canopy offering a shaded moist understory environment (presence of forest or treed swamp communities); and,
- 5) abundance of coarse woody debris (deadfall/logs, firm or decayed in the 10-24, 25-50 or >50 cm size classes).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – three (3) or more species of amphibians present in the patch, OR one (1)

species of amphibian that is abundant* in one (1) or more communities; OR two (2) or more critical habitat components present in the patch.

- **MEDIUM** – 1-2 species of amphibians present in the patch; OR one (1) species of amphibian that is occasional* in one (1) or more communities; OR one (1) critical habitat components present in the patch.
- **LOW** – No species of amphibian present in the patch, OR no critical habitat components present in the patch.

* *Abundance is based on call codes from the amphibian survey protocol as part of the Marsh Monitoring Program (Bird Studies Canada [BSC], 2009a). Presence is determined with a call code ≥ 1 ; occasional is defined as any species with a call code 2; abundant is defined as any species with a call code 3.*

D) Presence of Conifer Cover

This measure relates to *Representation* and *Habitat Diversity* and *Complexity* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) The full range of natural features that occur in an area, including both rare and common features, should be protected as a fundamental step in NHS planning to preserve biodiversity at the species and community levels; and,
- b) Natural areas (or clusters of areas) that span a range of topographic, soil and moisture conditions tend to contain a wider variety of plant species and plant communities, and may also support a greater diversity of ecological processes.

Important for providing winter food and shelter for a variety of wildlife species (MNRF, 2000a; MNRF, 2010b). For this measure, conifer communities are based on ELC (Lee *et al.*, 1998) and include FOC, FOM, SWC, SWM, and CUP.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Patch contains one or more conifer communities that are > 4.0 ha in size.
- **MEDIUM** – Patch contains one or more conifer communities that are between 2.0 and 4.0 ha in size.
- **LOW** – Patch contains conifer communities < 2.0 ha in size.

E) Fish Habitat Quality

This measure relates to *Hydrological and Related Values* and *Water Protection* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) Waterbodies, including wetlands, often represent a relatively small percentage of the total land area, yet they can be disproportionately more valuable than other area; and,
- b) Source water protection is important and natural hydrologic processes should be maintained (MNRF 2010b).

The health of an aquatic habitat is determined by the health of the water body and surrounding land use practices. Both permanent and intermittent watercourses can provide critical habitat for many species.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Dissolved oxygen > 8.0 mg/L OR abundant instream woody debris and rocks and watercourse with a natural channel located within or contiguous with the patch.
- **MEDIUM** – Dissolved oxygen 5.0 – 8.0 mg/L OR moderate amount of instream woody debris and rocks and portions of channelized watercourses within or contiguous with the patch.
- **LOW** – Dissolved oxygen < 5.0 mg/L OR no instream woody debris and sparse

structure and entire watercourse channelized within or contiguous with the patch.

Score for **Criterion 2.3** based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the five standards.

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 4.

The Woodland provides significant habitat for endangered or threatened species.

Criterion 4.1 – Significant habitat for endangered or threatened species.

A) Species At Risk Habitat This measure relates to *Species Rarity* as described in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the concept that in general, “habitats that contain rare species are more valuable than habitats that do not” (MNRF, 2010b).

Identification, evaluation, and listing of provincially endangered or threatened species is the responsibility of the MECP. Federally endangered or threatened species, as outlined in the *Species at Risk Act*, that are not covered under provincial legislation should be considered. Planning authorities may wish to have assessments of the significant portions of the habitat of SAR reviewed by the MECP.

SAR habitat present or previously identified: **YES** or **NO**

The presence of SAR habitat will add one **HIGH** score to the overall assessment

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 5.

The Woodland contains distinctive, unusual or high-quality natural communities or landforms.

Criterion 5.1 – Distinctive, unusual or high-quality communities.

This criterion relates to *Habitat Complexity and Diversity*, *Species Diversity and Rarity*, and *Uncommon Characteristics of Woodlands* as described in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) Natural areas (or clusters of areas) that span a range of topographic, soil and moisture conditions tend to contain a wider variety of plant species and plant communities, and may also support a greater diversity of ecological processes;
- b) Areas that contain a high diversity of plant and animal species are generally more important than areas that contain a lower diversity of species;
- c) Woodlands that are uncommon in terms of species composition, cover type, age or structure should be protected (MNRF 2010b).

A) ELC Community SRANK

Conservation status ranks for the province (SRanks) are based on vegetation communities' risk of elimination. This measure should be evaluated based on the most up-to-date conservation status rank as applied by Natural Heritage Information Centre.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – One (1) or more communities with an SRANK of S3 or lower.
- **MEDIUM** – No communities with an SRANK lower than S4.
- **LOW** – No communities with an SRANK lower than S5.

B) Significant Wildlife Habitat

Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH; including habitat for species of conservation concern and rare species) occurrences within the patch as determined through the *Significant Wildlife Habitat Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E* (MNRF, 2015a). This criteria applies to any SWH that is not evaluated through any other criteria within these guidelines (e.g., Criteria 2.2c).

SWH habitat present or previously identified: **YES** or **NO**

The presence of SWH habitat will add one **HIGH** score to the overall assessment

C) Rare Plant Species Presence / Absence

This measure assesses the number of element occurrences of regionally uncommon or regionally rare vegetation (further outlined in the glossary) and the presence of S1-S3, SRank species (which are also identified as SWH) within a patch. Oldham (2017) identifies the regionally rare and regionally uncommon vascular plant species in Middlesex for this criterion. **Table 3.1** includes the Criterion Ranking.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – One (1) Rare Plant (S1-S3) or 4 Regionally Rare plants.
- **MEDIUM** – One to three (1-3) Regionally Rare plants.
- **LOW** – One (1) Regionally Uncommon plant.

Table 3.1: Rare Plant Species Presence / Absence

Type and Status of Species	HIGH	MED	LOW
Rare Plant (S1-S3)	1		
Regionally Rare plant	4	1-3	
Regionally Uncommon plant			1

D) Size and distribution of trees

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – trees > 50 cm dbh abundant in one or more communities within the patch.
- **MEDIUM** – trees > 50 cm dbh rare or occasional in one or more communities within the patch.
- **LOW** – trees > 50 cm dbh not present in any communities within the patch.

Relative abundance, as it related to this criterion (i.e., rare, occasional, abundant), is described in **Section 8**.

E) Basal Area

This criterion aims to evaluate stand characteristics for total basal area, and basal area by tree species and size classes for each community. The post-logging provincial standard for tolerant hardwoods will be used as a measure of high-quality woodlands (MNRF, 2000a). It has been estimated that 45% (UTRCA, 2003) to 73% (Bowles, 2001) of forests in the City of London and surrounding area had basal areas lower than the recommended for optimal vegetation community resiliency and stability (MNRF, 2000a).

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Average basal area of trees for any community in the patch $\geq 16 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$ for trees $>25 \text{ cm DBH}$; OR $> 24 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$ for trees $> 10 \text{ cm DBH}$; OR all diameter class sizes are represented in the stand (saplings $< 10 \text{ cm}$; polewood $10\text{-}24 \text{ cm}$; small sawlog $26\text{-}36$; medium sawlog $38\text{-}48 \text{ cm}$; large sawlogs $50\text{-}60 \text{ cm}$; x-large or veteran trees $> 62 \text{ cm}$.
- **MEDIUM** – Average basal area for any community in the patch $12 - 24 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$ of trees $>10 \text{ cm DBH}$; OR missing one of polewood, small, medium, or large size classes.
- **LOW** – Average basal area for all communities in the patch $< 12 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$ for trees $> 10 \text{ cm DBH}$; OR missing two or more of polewood, small, medium, or large size classes.

Score for **Criterion 5.1** based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the five standards

NOTE: 5.1d and 5.1e may require field investigations to determine size, distribution, and basal areas of trees within a given vegetation community.

Criterion 5.2 – Distinctive, Unusual or High-Quality Landforms

This criterion relates to *Habitat Complexity and Diversity* as described in *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, and the following concepts:

- a) Natural areas (or clusters of areas) that span a range of topographic, soil and moisture conditions tend to contain a wider variety of plant species and plant communities, and may also support a greater diversity of ecological processes (MNRF 2010b).

A) Distinctive landform types

Analyses of the five broad landform types listed below that occur in the City were undertaken to assess landform-vegetation representational significance. This was derived by calculating the proportion of all vegetation patches overlapping with each of the five landforms areas that are considered protected (i.e., as Earth Science ANSIs, Environmentally Significant Areas, PSWs or river corridors) :

1. **Beach Ridge** landform is unusual and rare in the City with portions identified as Earth Science ANSI and PSW/ESA.
2. **Sand Plain** landform has very little protected areas present. It is considered high quality for the aggregate extraction industry.
3. **Spillway** is the 2nd largest landform unit with the greatest proportion of protected areas and contains most of the ESA's. It is the most distinctive landform unit including the Thames River, Stoney Creek, Medway Valley and Dingman Creek.
4. **Till Plain** is the largest landform unit with the least amount of protected areas and the highest amount of vegetation. Most of the land is considered high quality agricultural.
5. **Till Moraine** is the 3rd largest landform unit with fair amount of protected land. It accounts for the patches that fall on the upland landforms (Westminster Ponds – Pond Mills ESA / Meadowlily Woods).

Refer to **Figure 3.1** for glacial geomorphology mapping of landforms within the City of London.

Criterion Ranking:

- **HIGH** – Patch located on an Earth Science ANSI OR on the Beach Ridge or Sand Plain physiographic landform units.
- **MEDIUM** – Patch located on the Till Plain or Till Moraine physiographic landform unit.

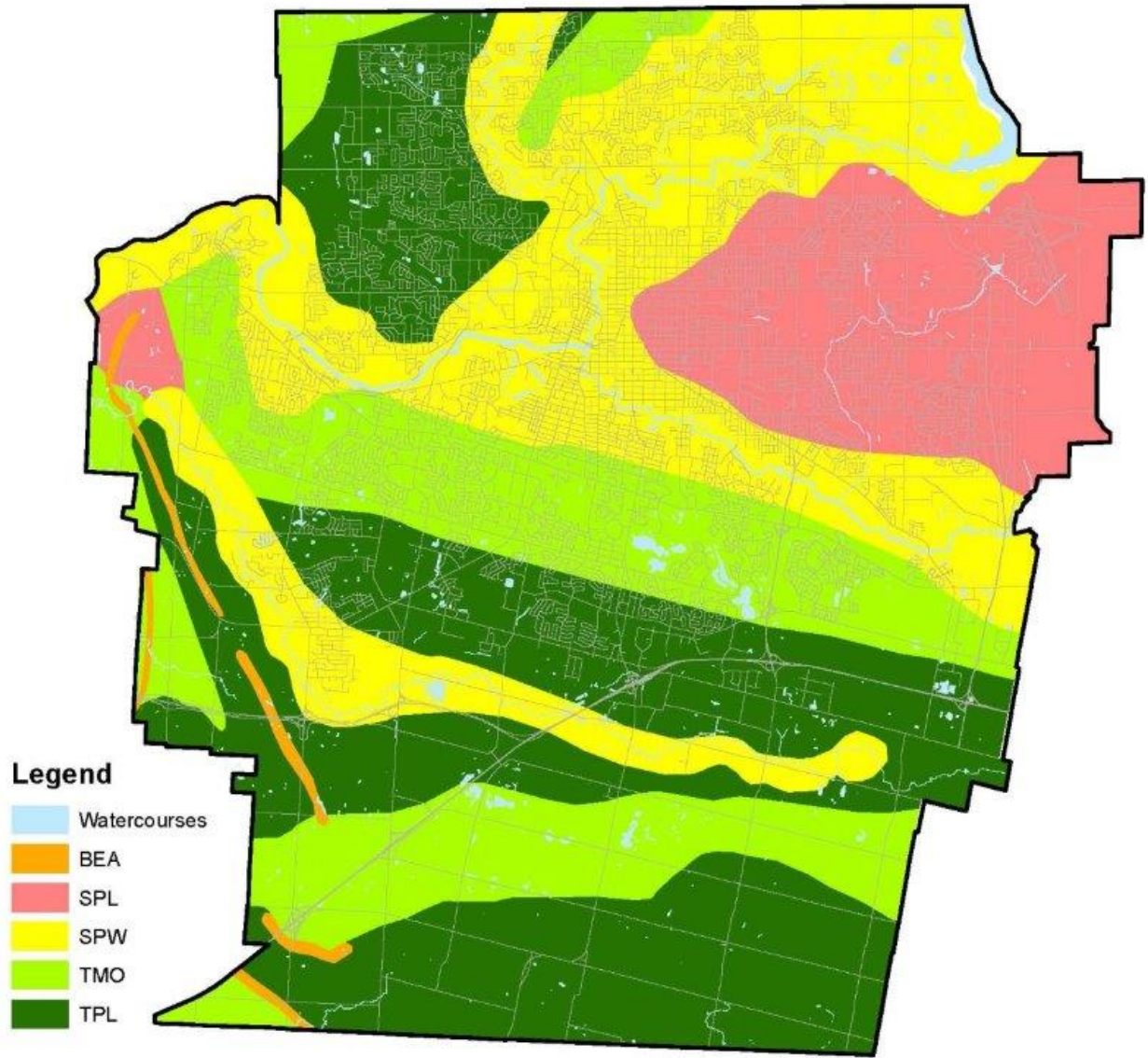
- **LOW** – Patch is located on the Spillway physiographic landform unit.

Score for **Criterion 5.2** (based on the highest standard achieved).

The woodland evaluation review summary sheet shall be completed and included as an EIS Appendix, where appropriate. The blank summary sheet can found in **Appendix D**.

DRAFT

Figure 3.1: City of London Glacial Geomorphology of the dominant physiographic units



3.2 Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs)

As outlined in *The London Plan*, ESAs are relatively large areas in the City that contain natural features and perform ecological functions that warrant their retention in a natural state. ESAs often capture a complex of wetlands, woodlands, SWH, and / or valleylands. The approach for delineation of wetlands, valleylands and SWH is described in **Section 4.2**.

In the City of London there are ESAs which have been confirmed as meeting the established criteria (which are included in the Green Space Place Type) and Potential ESAs that still require evaluation (which are included in the Environmental Review Place Type). ESAs that clearly satisfy two (2) or more of the criteria (as outlined in Section 3.1.2.2) will be considered for recognition as an ESA. These criteria are to be applied to all potential ESAs delineated on Map 5 of *The London Plan*.

3.2.1 City of London Subwatershed Regions Policy and Context

The policy framework for the identification and evaluation of ESAs is outlined in *The London Plan – Policies 1367_ to 1371_*. These policies provide the basis for the following guidelines and should be considered in conjunction with the Guidelines for Boundary Delineation as outlined in **Section 4**.

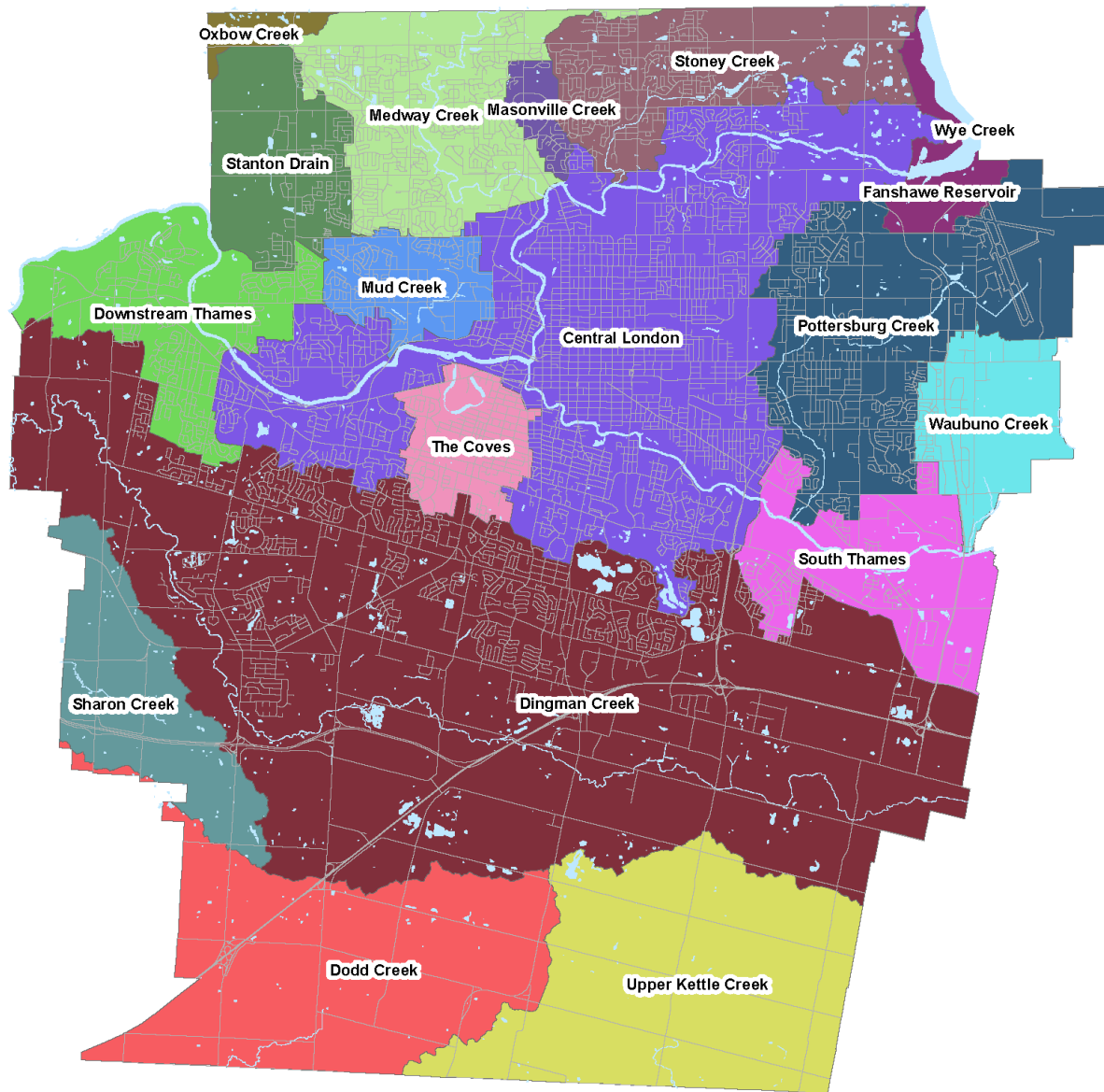
The following interpretations of the application guidelines should be noted:

- These ESA guidelines are to be applied to Potential ESAs. Please refer to **Section 4.6** related to boundary delineation to determine whether Potential ESA(s) form part of an ESA patch. If a Potential ESA is not included in an ESA patch boundary, it must be assessed as a separate patch.
- The same natural heritage feature cannot be counted to satisfy more than one criterion for a given area. However, each feature shall be evaluated and listed under the criterion that it meets.
 - For example, if a community is identified as rare or uncommon, it would meet Criterion 1 listed below. If this community also contained high-quality, natural landform-vegetation communities representative of typical pre-settlement conditions, it would also meet Criterion 2 listed below. The community would be listed under both criteria but would only be applied towards the evaluation of significance for one of the criteria.
 - However, if there were other high-quality, natural landform-vegetation communities representative of typical pre-settlement conditions identified within the Potential ESA, Criterion 2 could also be applied towards the evaluation of significance.
- “Regional level” refers to the lands covered by the City of London subwatershed studies, including Oxbow Creek Subwatershed, Dingman Creek Subwatershed and the Central Area Subwatershed. For mapping of subwatersheds, refer to **City of London Subwatersheds** mapping and/or submit a **GIS Data Request** to the City of London – Geomatics Department.
- The term “County” refers to Middlesex County.
- Appropriate expertise, provided by a qualified professional (as outlined in **Section 2.6.6.11**) may be required to apply certain elements of Criterion 1 (unusual landforms), Criterion 4 (significant hydrological processes), Criterion 5 (aspects of biodiversity), Criterion 6 (important wildlife habitat or linkage functions), and Criterion 7 (significant habitat). Each time a criterion is applied, the rationale and source of expertise should be documented.
- The minimum data requirements to apply certain measures of a criterion, such as diversity indices, are detailed in the guidelines below, as well as the **Data Collection Standards** outlined in **Appendix C**. A standardized approach to data collection will enable more consistent application of these indices, and can inform long term planning.




















- For documentation of rare community and species status, the most up-to-date resources and authorities will be utilized. Lists of rare and unusual communities and species will be considered open-ended, since data collected from other natural areas inventories may result in additions and deletions.
- For vegetation communities, the ELC system for Southern Ontario (Lee *et al.*, 1998) will be the standard protocol used to differentiate natural vegetation communities within patches.
- The term "area" in this document refers to patches or patch clusters (i.e., the combined area of contiguous patches), which are defined during boundary delineation (as outlined in **Section 4**).
- The focus of each criterion is to identify features of significance for protection.

DRAFT

Figure 3.2: City of London Subwatershed Regions



Legend

	Watercourses		Medway Creek		Stoney Creek
	Central London		Mud Creek		The Coves
	Dingman Creek		Oxbow Creek		Upper Kettle Creek
	Dodd Creek		Pottersburg Creek		Waubuno Creek
	Downstream Thames		Sharon Creek		Wye Creek
	Fanshawe Reservoir		South Thames		
	Masonville Creek		Stanton Drain		

3.2.3 Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs) Evaluation Criteria

The London Plan 1371_- Criterion 1:

The area contains unusual landforms and/or rare to uncommon natural communities within the country, province or London subwatershed region.

Background: Identification of landforms that reflect geological processes or features instrumental in forming London's landscape or communities that have limited occurrence, abundance or range (distribution) is important for the maintenance of biodiversity including ecosystem, landscape, species and genetic diversity.

Application: Unusual Landforms

National level: Areas identified by recognized experts as geologically significant (e.g. Ontario Geological Survey)

Provincial level: Provincially significant Earth Science ANSIs

Regional level: Expert opinion (e.g. Dreimanis 1964a, 1964b) and data obtained through the Subwatershed Studies

Rare to Uncommon Natural Communities

National/Provincial level: Significance as interpreted from the Carolinian Zone community Subnational (Ontario) S-Ranks outlined in the **Natural Heritage Information Centre** (MNRF, 2020) or subsequent updates and/or amendments. A natural community is considered rare to uncommon if the S-Rank is between S1 and S3. Community identification can be determined through existing data and/or data obtained from the Subwatershed Studies. Rare vegetation communities can also be identified as evaluated through the SWH Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E (MNRF, 2015a).

Regional level: Regionally significant Earth Science ANSIs and vegetation communities identified as rare to uncommon based on an analysis of the London Subwatershed Studies Life Science Inventories (Bowles *et al.*, 1994) or the best available data. This list will be open-ended to incorporate any new data collected from the London subwatershed region. It will include communities or "species assemblages" that have limited distribution and occurrence within the region (e.g. fens, older growth forests, boreal species assemblages), or that are at the limits of their distributional ranges (e.g. bogs), or that are remnants of original habitat (e.g. prairie and oak savanna). Vegetation communities meeting the criteria for SWH as outlined in **The London Plan – Policy 1354** are also considered rare.

Source References: Bogs, fens (Riley, 1989), or prairie/savannas (Riley and Bakowsky, 1993) may be identified through the presence of assemblages of indicator species. Older growth forests are evaluated in the context of the London subwatershed region, the top five percent of the oldest stage forests (climax and sub-climax) that are relatively undisturbed. Boreal indicator species will be defined by a specific list based on information obtained through the London Subwatershed Life Science Inventories (Bowles *et al.*, 1994).

There may be special cases where rare to uncommon vegetation communities are described by the presence of Nationally, Provincially, or Regionally rare plant species, if they are abundant or dominant (as described in **Section 8**) in one or more strata (i.e., canopy, understorey, etc as described in Lee *et al.*, 1998). In these situations, the presence of the rare plant would not be used to meet **Criterion 7** for rarity.

The London Plan 1371 - Criterion 2:

The area contains high-quality natural landform-vegetation communities that are representative of typical pre-settlement conditions of the dominant physiographic units within the London subwatershed region, and/or that have been classified as distinctive in the Province of Ontario.

Background: The focus of this criterion is to identify representative examples of the full range of landform-vegetation types that occur on each of the five dominant physiographic units within the London subwatershed region (**Figure 3.1**). By representing all landform-vegetation associations in a protected areas system a significant portion of the biodiversity of an area will be maintained (Crins, 1996). By capturing representative native vegetation in the NHS, examples of pre-European settlement landscapes are also protected.

This Criterion differs from Criterion 1 with the emphasis on representation, size, and quality. The landform-vegetation communities do not have to be rare as long as they are the best examples of their type.

The dominant physiographic units are represented by the five glacial geomorphological features based on the Ontario Geological Survey Map P.2715 (Chapman and Putnam, 1984).

The presence of disturbance indicators does not necessarily disqualify a site from meeting this criterion if other factors relevant to this criterion are satisfied or if it is the only representative example. Similarly, lack of disturbance does not necessarily qualify a site. Disturbance indicators are used as a relative measure to rank sites.

Application: Sites representing the same landform-vegetation types will be ranked in a relative manner to select the best examples. Priority should be given to designating the best examples, with respect to size and quality. In addition, similar landform-vegetation community types will be compared only within the same physiographic unit (e.g. till moraine; till plain; sand plain; spillway; beach ridge)

Distinctive and natural landform-vegetation communities are defined at Provincial or Regional levels:

Provincial level: Presence of Provincially significant ANSIs as identified in MNRF Land Information Ontario (LIO). Presence of PSWs as defined by the **OWES** (MNRF, 2014a).

Regional level: All wetlands within the City of London are protected in accordance with **The London Plan**.

Presence of regionally significant ANSIs identified in LIO.

Presence of Ecosite vegetation community types (as outlined in ELC; Lee *et al.*, 1998) of high quality on distinctive topographic, landform, or cultural features, applied through existing data and data obtained from the Subwatershed Studies.

The following community types are examples, and thus not an exhaustive list:

- Moist-Fresh Black Maple Deciduous Forest Type on bottomland;
- Fresh Hemlock Coniferous Forest Type on valley slope;
- Fresh Sugar Maple-Beech Deciduous Forest Type on tableland; and
- Fresh Sugar Maple-Beech Deciduous Forest Type on valley slope.

Comments: Ecosite vegetation communities, as classified through ELC (Lee *et al.*, 1998), can be considered high-quality and thus applicable for this criterion based on the following:

- Rare vegetation communities as evaluated through the SWH Criteria Schedules

for Ecoregion 7E (MNRF, 2015a);

- Vegetation communities meeting the criteria for SWH as outlined in **The London Plan – Policy 1354**; and, Vegetation communities with an SRank 1-3 as described by the Natural Heritage Information Centre.

The London Plan 1371 – Criterion 3:

The area, due to its large size, generally more than 40 hectares, provides habitat for species intolerant of disturbance or for species that require extensive blocks of suitable habitat.

Background: The focus of this criterion is to identify large contiguous blocks of natural habitat and/or combined “patches” or “patch clusters” that cover an extensive area.

The presence of large contiguous blocks of forested habitat are used as an indicator of forest-interior conditions which are required by certain forest-interior and area-sensitive species. The size, shape, and continuity of these forested areas are important factors for the identification of forest interior conditions

Large patches, or patch clusters are important for maintaining frequency of habitat across a landscape and genetic diversity of populations among interacting patches.

Application: This criterion can be met in any one (1) of two (2) ways:

1. The size of a patch is generally greater than 40 ha or the combined size of patches is generally greater than 40 ha and the patches are not interrupted by gaps wider than 20 m; or,
2. The area either a) contains some interior forest habitat which is at least 100 m from all forest edges and is not interrupted by gaps wider than 20 m, OR b) there is confirmed presence of one or more breeding birds which are either forest-interior species or area-sensitive species.

Source References: Freemark and Collins (1992) and Sandilands (1997) for forest interior species; Magee (1996) updated from (Hounsell, 1989) for area-sensitive species.

Comments: For patches or patch clusters straddling the City boundary, the area determination shall be based on the whole patch or patch cluster since this represents the ecological unit to which the criterion is applied.

The minimum size limit will result in the inclusion of only the largest areas in the London subwatershed region, as determined through available data and data from the subwatershed studies. [Note: Of 25 ESAs or Potential ESAs, four (4) fell within the range of 150 to 500 ha and two (2) were greater than 500 ha].

The London Plan 1371 - Criterion 4:

The area, due to its hydrologic characteristics, contributes significantly to the healthy maintenance (quality or quantity) of a natural system beyond its boundaries.

Background: The focus of this criterion is to identify natural areas that contribute significantly to the quantity and quality of groundwater and surface water resources in the region. Factors such as the magnitude of the area covered or volumes of water involved and the importance of the resource should be used to assess the significance.

Landscape position and terrain setting should also be used to evaluate the significance of recharge areas.

Application: Presence of indicators of hydrological processes noted during subwatershed studies include but are not limited to:

- water storage;
- water release (discharge);
- wetlands;
- water quality improvement;
- first order stream / headwater;
- groundwater recharge and discharge areas identified on subwatershed maps as high potential; and,
- water conveyance (i.e. floodplain and overland flow paths).

For wetlands, those that meet three or more of five key hydrologic functions as identified in the hydrology section of the **OWES** (MNR, 2014a) would be considered significant by the City of London. [Threshold was determined based on a review of ten evaluated wetlands within the City of London].

For areas of significant groundwater recharge, where large areas have been identified as high potential, it is not expected that the entire area identified would qualify for this criterion. To be considered for inclusion as part of an ESA, the recharge or discharge area must also be part of a vegetation patch as identified in a subwatershed study or support naturally succeeding vegetation communities.

Permanent, non-channelized first-order streams containing Type I-II habitat (DFO, 1994) qualify for inclusion as part of the ESA.

Source
References: Sources of information include but are not limited to wetland and hydrologic information presented by the UTRCA and by the Subwatershed Studies Aquatic Resources Management Reports for Vision '96 Subwatersheds (Beak Consultants 1995).

[The London Plan 1371 – Criterion 5:](#)

The area has a high biodiversity of biological communities and/or associated plant and animal species within the context of the London subwatershed region.

Background: The focus of this criterion is to identify areas that demonstrate high variability and variety of plants, animals, and communities or habitats. The primary attributes of “biodiversity” include “compositional”, “structural”, and “functional” diversity.

Application: For vegetation communities and species in the London subwatershed region, biodiversity can be measured in relative terms (e.g., based on analysis of the patches surveyed, the top percentage of patches that support the highest number of community types, or native species of plants, birds, mammals, herpetofauna, etc.).

Source
Reference: Subwatershed Studies Life Science Inventories (Bowles *et al.*, 1994)

For native species, Species-Area Curves may also be used to measure diversity. Areas where the actual number of species exceeds the expected number are considered diverse. Only native species will be used in the calculation.

Habitat diversity may also be used as supporting evidence of diversity (e.g., for herpetofauna the presence of vernal pools, woodland-pond interface, downed woody debris).

Comments: Evaluation of biodiversity should consider the variability of data obtained through different

levels of field efforts.

Vegetation community classification will be based on *An Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario* (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

The London Plan 1371 – Criterion 6:

The area serves an important wildlife habitat or linkage function.

Background: The focus of this criterion is to identify significant wildlife habitats or linkages between significant natural features as identified in SWH Criteria Schedule for Ecoregion 7E. These habitats and linkages contribute to overall landscape richness and provides habitat for wildlife (MNRF, 2015a).

Application: Important wildlife habitat functions are outlined in depth in the SWH Criteria Schedule for Ecoregion 7E (MNRF, 2015a) and are grouped under the following four broad categories:

- Seasonal Concentration Areas of Animals;
- Rare Vegetation Communities or Specialized Habitat for Wildlife;
- Habitat for Species of Conservation Concern; and,
- Animal Movement Corridors.

The site fulfills an external linkage or corridor function between two or more significant habitats. The value of a linkage or corridor will be based upon characteristics such as habitat, shape, width, and length. Linkage function and attributes are described in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* (MNRF, 2010b). Linkages may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- early successional woodlands and plantations;
- water bodies, watercourses and valleylands;
- riparian zones;
- steep slopes and groundwater discharge areas;
- old fields;
- hydro and pipeline corridors;
- abandoned road and rail allowances; and,
- recreational greenway parks.

Source References: MNRF files and maps; subwatershed studies; other data obtained through site specific field investigations; MNRF (1997); Riley and Mohr (1994).

Comments: Linkages should connect significant habitat areas for native species that will benefit from the presence of this linkage. Linear habitats (such as fencerows) that may have intrinsic habitat value, but do not connect larger protected areas, and those that are human imposed with no regard for the natural landscape system (such as channelized watercourses) should not be considered linkages (Harris and Scheck, 1991). Linkages and corridors, while also providing habitat or wildlife value, are important because they connect more substantive patches of habitat.

The London Plan 1371 – Criterion 7:

The Area provides significant habitat for rare, threatened, or endangered indigenous species of plants or animals that are rare within the country, province, or county.

Background: The focus of this criterion is to identify populations of rare, threatened or endangered species for protection. This criterion is focused on SAR and rare species not covered

under significant wildlife habitat under Criterion 6 (e.g., species of conservation concern).

Definitions of significant habitat are given under each of the categories of vascular plants and animals. The most current sources of rarity designations will be used. Lists of rare species are considered open-ended as new information will result in amendments over time. Data from the Subwatershed Studies Life Science Inventories (Bowles *et al.*, 1994) were used to update Middlesex County status for plants.

Application: Plant Species

Habitat for plant species should be indicated by the presence of a population. The presence of a single specimen of a rare plant will not qualify an area under this criterion.

Federal SAR : COSEWIC Status reports

NHIC Global Ranks (GRANK) for Rare Vascular Plants (Oldham, 1994a) and Mosses (Oldham, 1994b).

- Species listed with a global rank of G1 to G3
- SAR listed under the *Species at Risk Act*

Rare Vascular Plants in Canada (Argus and Pryer, 1990), Database of Vascular Plants of Canada (VASCAN; Canadensys, 2020)

Provincial SAR: NHIC Provincial Rank (SRANK) for Rare Vascular Plants (Oldham, 2009; Oldham, 2017) and for Mosses (Oldham, 1994b).

- Species listed with a provincial rank of S1 to S3
- MECP designated SAR in Ontario

Atlas of the Rare Vascular Plants of Ontario (Oldham & Brinker, 2009; Oldham, 2017)
COSSARO Status reports

Middlesex County Rare Species: Status of the Vascular Plants for Ecoregion 7E (Oldham, 2017)

- Rare in SW Ontario

SWFLORA database for Subwatershed Life Science Inventories (Bowles *et al.*, 1994)

- Rare in Middlesex County

Species recorded that have 1-4 records (stations) in Middlesex County. Note: Plant records collected from the subwatershed studies were used to update the rare status at the county level.

Animal Species

Habitat for animal species should be interpreted to mean areas where one (1) or more rare species are resident or breeding in the area, and/or making use of the area for a key component of their life cycle (e.g. territory, nesting, critical feeding grounds or wintering concentrations). Documentation of repeated (multi-year) use of an area by a species adds to the significance of the habitat. For breeding birds, the presence of suitable habitat for territory, nesting and feeding; for butterflies, the presence of suitable habitat including the host plants upon which they feed; for mammals, the presence of signs of active use of an area (e.g. dens, bedding areas, well-used trails, scat, etc.); for herpetofauna, the presence of suitable habitat for breeding (e.g. vernal pools, downed woody debris) and hibernating (presence of hibernacula).

Federal SAR: COSEWIC Status reports

NHIC Global Ranks (GRANK) for Amphibians and Reptiles, Mammals, Birds, Insects (e.g.,

butterflies, moths, odonata, hymenoptera, etc.) and Fishes

- Species listed with a global rank of G1 to G3
- SAR listed under the *Species at Risk Act*

Provincial SAR: NHIC Provincial Rank (SRANK) for Amphibians and Reptiles, Mammals, Birds, Insects, and Fishes

- Species listed with a provincial rank of S1 to S3
- MECP SAR in Ontario
- COSSARO Status reports

Middlesex County Rare Species: Southwestern Ontario regional status based on records in provincial atlases:

- mammals – e.g., Atlas of the Mammals of Ontario (Dobbyn, 1994)
- breeding birds – e.g., Avian Conservation Assessment Database (Partners in Flight, 2020), Atlas of the Breeding Birds of Ontario (OBBA) 2001-2005 (OBBA, 2007)
- insects – e.g., Ontario Butterfly and Moth Atlases (Toronto Entomologists' Association, 2020)
- herpetofauna – e.g., Ontario Reptile and Amphibian Atlas (Ontario Nature, 2019)

Middlesex County status of rarity is based upon the most recent existing county records:

- mammals - provincial mammal atlas and records from MNR District office
- breeding birds - open ended lists from the provincial bird atlas (OBBA, 2007; Partners in Flight, 2020) and best available county information;
- insects - best available county information;
- herpetofauna - status of amphibians and reptiles in Middlesex County (Ontario Nature, 2019)

Comments: Other non-vascular plant (e.g. mosses) and faunal groups (e.g. Odonata) should be included where and when the information is available.

The following sections provide guidelines for the evaluation of significance and ecological function for the following natural heritage features as specifically outlined in ***The London Plan***:

- Wetlands;
- Significant Wildlife Habitat; and,
- Valleylands.

Although other natural heritage features may require evaluation and subsequent protection (e.g., fish habitat, wetlands, etc.), the guidelines for evaluating those natural heritage features are outlined in the applicable provincial, federal, or other technical documents. It is expected that all natural heritage features be evaluated in accordance with the appropriate and most up-to-date guidelines and/or policies.

3.3 Provincially Significant Wetlands, Wetlands and Unevaluated Wetlands

There are three (3) categories of wetlands within the City of London protected as per ***The London Plan*** (Policies 1330_ to 1336_):

- Provincially Significant Wetlands (PSWs)
- Wetlands, and
- Unevaluated Wetlands.

PSWs (on the City's Map 5 and / or in the MNRF's mapping data layers), as identified and mapped by the MNRF, may be re-evaluated by proponents in accordance with the Ontario Wetland Evaluation System (OWES) (MNRF, 2014a) as outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*. MNRF remains responsible for reviewing and approving any additions, deletions or refinements to identified PSWs.

Assessments under the OWES system must be done by a qualified professional who is certified and experienced in application of the system.

Unevaluated Wetlands mapped in the City of London (on the City's Map 5 and / or in the MNRF's mapping data layers) are also to be evaluated for significance using the OWES as outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*. The evaluation is to be submitted to MNRF for their review and decisioning.

Unmapped wetlands identified through the vegetation community assessment process may need to be evaluated for significance using the OWES system. These include the following ELC Community Series:

- SWAMP - deciduous swamp (SWD), mixed swamp (SWM) or coniferous swamp (SWC);
- FEN – open fen (FEO), shrub fen (FES) and treed fen (FET)
- BOG – open bog (BOO), shrub bog (BOS) and treed bog (BOT)
- MARSH – meadow marsh (MAM), shallow marsh (MAS)
- SHALLOW WATER – submerged shallow aquatic (SAS), mixed shallow aquatic (SAM) and floating-leaved shallow aquatic (SAF), and
- OPEN WATER (OAO).

Guidance for boundary delineation of wetlands is provided in **Section 4**.

Wetlands evaluated for provincial significance that do not meet the criteria for designation as a PSW (per OWES), as confirmed by the MNRF, will be identified as "Wetlands" within the City of London, irrespective of size or condition.

PSWs, Unevaluated Wetlands and other Wetlands will be added, removed or refined to Map 5 – Natural Heritage in **The London Plan** as new information becomes available. PSWs and Wetlands are also mapped as Green Space Place Type on Map 1, while Unevaluated Wetlands are mapped as features for Environmental Review.

All wetlands (including PSWs) and their adjacent lands are also regulated by the local Conservation Authorities and may also require consideration under the applicable Conservation Authority policies, as well as the Natural and Human-made Hazards Policies in **The London Plan**.

For more information related to the evaluation of significant wetlands using the OWES, and its application under the Provincial Policy Statement, refer to the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* (MNRF, 2010b) as well as Ontario's Wetlands evaluation website.

3.4 Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH)

Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH) should be assessed utilizing the process outlined in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*, specifically utilizing the *Significant Wildlife Habitat Technical Guide* (MNRF, 2000), in conjunction with the supplementary *Significant Wildlife Habitat Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E* (MNRF 2015a). **The London Plan** – Policies 1352 – 1354 provide key considerations for the determination of significance for wildlife habitat within the City of London. With respect to Policy 1354_3, passive recreation opportunities include activities such as hiking, photography and eco-tourism.

Within the City of London SWH is designated as a natural feature/area within the Green Space Place Type, therefore Green Space Place Type policies outlined in **The London Plan** are applicable.

3.5 Significant Valleylands and Valleylands

Valleylands, as defined in the *Provincial Policy Statement*, refers to natural areas that occur in a valley or landform depression with standing or flowing water for a period of the year. Valleylands include features such as rivers, streams, other watercourses, and ravines. Valleylands provide many important ecological functions (e.g., wildlife habitat, water storage/transport), as well as linkages/connectivity between other natural heritage features and areas within the NHS.

Policies for the identification and protection of Significant Valleylands and Valleylands are provided in **The London Plan** (Policies 1344 to 1349) The policies provide considerations for the identification and determination of significance for valleylands based on the evaluation of landform-related functions and attributes, ecological features and restored ecological functions.

Table 8-1 in the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* outlines specific standards on the evaluation of function criteria for valleylands (e.g., surfacewater functions, distinctive landforms, habitat value, etc.). These criteria should be referenced when determining the significance of valleylands in conjunction with the guidance provided in **The London Plan**.

The London Plan also includes direction (Policy 1350) for the determination of valley corridor width. Supplemental guidance related to boundary delineation for valleylands is described in **Section 4.2.2** of the EMGs.

Within the City of London, Significant Valleylands are designated as a natural feature/area within the Green Space Place Type, therefore Green Space Place Type policies outlined in **The London Plan** are also applicable. Valleylands that have been identified but not yet assessed are identified within the Environmental Review Place Type, pending evaluation. Note that air photo interpretation and / or site investigations may identify additional valleyland features.

In consultation with the applicable Conservation Authority, the City of London may consider alterations to river or stream valleys and watercourses to enhance, rehabilitate, and/or restore the system (e.g., bank stabilization, riparian plantings, and barrier removal) in accordance with Policy 1351.

4. Boundary Delineation of Natural Heritage Features and Areas

Delineation of natural features and areas requires an understanding of both technical and policy elements related to the feature and / or area being considered. Ecological boundary delineation is an important part of the planning process as it determines what will be considered for further evaluation. The City of London recognizes that it is important for the approaches taken to be as transparent and consistent as possible both to preserve the integrity of the City's Natural Heritage System (NHS) and ensure the planning process is being implemented appropriately.

Ecological boundary delineation is required before natural features and areas can be evaluated for significance, and may be reviewed when site alteration or development is proposed adjacent to natural heritage features and areas that have already been identified and confirmed. This section provides guidelines for delineating the ecological boundaries of natural heritage features and areas including currently mapped and unmapped features. It specifically includes:

- An overview of the jurisdictional responsibility and policy direction related to ecological boundary delineation for each NHS component in the City
- General guidance for delineation of unevaluated vegetation patches in the City of London, and
- Feature-specific boundary delineation guidance for: Wetlands, Woodlands and Significant Woodlands, Valleylands and Significant Valleylands, Significant Wildlife Habitat, Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs) and other lands to be identified through an environmental study (such as critical Function Zones [CFZs] and linkages).

Notably, the boundaries delineated for natural heritage features do not include any setbacks, buffers, or adjacent lands. Guidance for Ecological Buffers is provided in *The London Plan* (Policies 1412_ to 1416_) and supplemented with the guidance in Section 5 of these EMGs.

In addition, these boundary guidelines are focused solely on ecological boundaries irrespective of property lines. However, it is understood that while natural heritage features and areas may cross property boundaries, that field verification of such boundaries may be limited to the subject property.

The purpose of these guidelines is:

1. To document and describe a repeatable process based strictly on ecological considerations, leading to credible mapping which can be used for planning, protection and monitoring;
2. To provide the basis for resolving variations between different scales and types of mapping; and,
3. To establish a common understanding and approach between planners, consultants, and the public regarding the ecological aspects of boundary delineation for natural features.

4.1 Policy Context and General Guidance

Some components of the City's NHS must have their boundaries confirmed by the appropriate federal or provincial agency, while the boundaries of other components are the City's responsibility to confirm, sometimes in consultation with the local Conservation Authority. An overview of the jurisdiction responsible for confirming boundaries for the various NHS components, as specified in *The London Plan*, is summarized in **Table 2.1**.

The following applies to any natural heritage feature or area, including vegetation patches, mapped or unmapped, to be considered as part of an Environmental Study through the planning process.

1. The term “vegetation patch” refers to an area that contains natural vegetation, along with associated features and functions. Vegetation patches are considered as one unit and can be comprised of multiple “natural heritage features” inside the patch (e.g., woodland, wetland, etc.). The initial feature boundary will be drawn at the interface between naturalized vegetation and the adjacent lands, generally conforming to the patch outline.
2. The ecological boundary is determined based on ecological principles, refined through the application of these guidelines, and are irrespective of property lines. Boundary delineation guidelines shall not be used to separate a vegetation patch into specific parts that can be treated individually as having lesser or greater significance and/or contribution to ecological function.
3. Application of these guidelines should be illustrated at a map scale of 1:10,000, using aerial photography and other tools as necessary. Further refinements will be made at a smaller scale (e.g., 1:5,000 or 1:2,000 scale), and may require field investigations. For the completion of an Environmental Study, boundaries must be geo-referenced to the best accuracy possible.
4. The diagrams and examples that form part of the conditions for boundary delineation provided below are intended to convey the intent of the guidelines. While not drawn to scale, these diagrams do depict the relative sizes and distances of the areas shown. A legend has been included to aid in the interpretation of the diagrams.
5. In the application of these guidelines, the most recent map sources, current and historical aerial photographs, and ecological background studies/documents should be used to verify

4.2 Wetlands

The overarching policy framework for PSWs, Wetlands, and Unevaluated Wetlands is outlined in **The London Plan** – Policies 1330 to 1336. Wetlands of any size must be identified, delineated and screened in accordance with both City and Conservation Authority policies.

The first step in delineating wetland features is to define the wetland types and delineate these vegetation communities approximately utilizing the ELC System (Lee *et al.*, 1998). The second step, is to confirm and, if needed, refine the delineation of internal boundaries (e.g., between different types of wetlands, boundary between wetland and upland communities), external boundaries (e.g., between wetlands and non-natural land uses), and wetland complexes (if applicable) using the Ontario Wetland Evaluation System (OWES) (MNR, 2014a). The OWES provides in-depth instructions on the delineation of internal and external boundaries and generally consists determining wetland boundaries within areas of gradual ecological change (i.e., transitional areas, eco-tones) utilizing a combination of the following information:

- Transition (i.e., a 50% split) between wetland and upland plant community (percent cover);
- Topography, such as elevation and slope; and,
- Soil substrate.

Wetland boundaries should be scaled to 1:10,000 for mapping purposes, with the width of the boundary line being scaled to cover the equivalent of 15 m in real world application (MNR, 2014a).

The wetland boundary delineation must be conducted by a qualified professional (i.e., a person certified and experienced in the application of OWES), and is typically undertaken in the field with the applicable Conservation Authority. Existing boundaries of PSWs remain as mapped unless any proposed revisions are approved in writing by the MNR.

Beyond the wetland community boundaries, the Critical Function Zone (CFZ) must also be included for constraints mapping and site planning. CFZs are non-wetland areas within which biophysical functions or attributes directly related to the wetland occur (Environment Canada, 2013). Effectively, the CFZ is a functional extension of the wetland into the upland. For example, this could include: upland grassland

nesting habitat for waterfowl (that use the wetland to raise their broods), upland foraging areas, overwintering and nesting habitat for reptiles and amphibians. Foraging areas for frogs and dragonflies, and / or nesting habitats for birds that straddle the wetland-upland ecozone could also be considered part of the CFZ.

CFZs do not replace the functions of a buffer. For more in-depth information on determining CFZs, refer to Environment Canada (2013).

4.3 Significant Woodlands and Woodlands

The overarching policy framework for the identification and evaluation of woodlands is outlined in **The London Plan** – Policies 1337 to 1343, 1383_ and 1386, and includes local criteria aligned with the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual*.

The *Provincial Policy Statement* protects Significant Woodlands by not permitting development and site alteration within these features or on adjacent lands unless it has been demonstrated that there will be no negative impacts on the natural features or their ecological functions.

Most potential Woodlands are shown as Unevaluated Vegetation Patches on Map 5 – Natural Heritage and as Environmental Review Place Type on Map 1 in **The London Plan**. However, as identified in **The London Plan** – Policy 1216, the absence of vegetation patches from the aforementioned mapping does not necessarily mean that additional unevaluated vegetation patches do not exist. Therefore, proponents must assess the subject lands in question to screen for the presence of any additional Unevaluated Vegetation Patches and/or other vegetation patches larger than 0.5 ha.

Significant Woodland and woodland boundary delineation shall be conducted by a qualified professionals with expertise in ecology, hydrology and geomorphology. All woodland boundaries are to be delineated in the field at the Drip Line of the feature.

Section 3.1 includes guidance related to the evaluation of woodlands.

4.4 Valleylands and Significant Valleylands

The overarching policy framework for the identification of Significant Valleylands is outlined in **The London Plan** – Policies 1347 to 1349, and includes local criteria aligned with the *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* guidance, but also refer to this guidance for additional criteria.

The *Provincial Policy Statement* defines valleylands as natural areas that occurs in a valley or other landform depression that has water flowing through or standing for some period of the year, and includes rivers, streams, other watercourses and ravines) (MMAH, 2020). Significant valleylands also play an essential role in the NHS, such as providing connectivity (e.g., migration and dispersal corridors) (MNRF, 2010b).

Valleylands may be clearly defined (e.g., with steep ravines sloping down towards a permanent watercourse), or may not have a well-defined corridor or permanent flows (e.g., in areas of headwaters, seeps) (MNRF, 2010a).

Specific policies for the boundary (width) delineation of Significant Valleylands are outlined in **The London Plan** Policy 1350. Significant valleyland boundary delineation shall be conducted by a qualified professionals with expertise in ecology, hydrology and geomorphology.

Section 3.5 includes guidance related to the evaluation of valleylands.

4.5 Significant Wildlife Habitat

The overarching policy framework for the protection and determining the significance of Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH) is outlined in **The London Plan** Policies 1352_ to 1355_. These policies point to the guidance in the SWHTG (MNRF 2000b) and the NHRM (MNRF 2010b), the Province's criteria schedules for Ecoregion 7E (MNRF 2015a) for determination of the significance and delineation of SWH and municipal criteria outlined in Policy 1354_.

SWH is the most complex habitat category in the City's NHS (and in the *Provincial Policy Statement*) as it seeks to capture ecologically important and somewhat specialized habitat types for a broad cross section of species and ecological functions. In Ecoregion 7E, the ecoregion in which London occurs, there are 35 categories of SWH. SWH often occurs as a subset of or within other natural heritage features or areas (such as wetlands or woodlands), but may also extend beyond or occur outside of such features or areas.

The applicable guidance, particularly for the ecoregional criteria, largely relies on vegetation community polygons delineated at the Ecosite level using the ELC system (Lee *et al.*, 1998) to determine the extent of habitat to be considered as SWH, although a few SWH categories are delineated using the presence or absence of other habitat features not linked to one or more specific Ecosite type. Nonetheless, in most cases, the presence of one or more of the specified Ecosite types in conjunction with the presence of one or more of the defining criteria within the applicable polygons is sufficient to warrant consideration of a feature or area as candidate SWH. The current and proposed land use context should, however, also be considered in conjunction with the habitat needs and sensitivities of the species / group of species in question, and the broader context of the NHS on a City-wide scale, in determining appropriate boundaries for the SWH type.

It is the City of London's responsibility to determine whether or not the candidate SWH should be confirmed, the extent of the habitat to be protected, and the mitigative measures required, if any. Depending on the nature and location of the SWH, SWH boundaries should also be determined in consultation with the other applicable agencies (e.g., Conservation Authority).

Further, delineation of SWH should be informed by information collected from aerial mapping and observations from site investigations, and should be confirmed in the field by a qualified professional.

Section 3 provides supplemental guidance on the evaluation of SWH.

4.6 Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs)

The overarching policy framework for the evaluation of Environmentally Significant Areas is outlined in **The London Plan** – Policies 1367_ to 1371_, and includes local criteria unique to London. As outlined in **The London Plan**, ESAs are relatively large areas in the City that contain natural features and perform ecological functions that warrant their retention in a natural state. ESAs often capture a complex of wetlands, woodlands, SWH, and/or valleylands and are delineated based on the features that they contain.

ESAs that have been evaluated are included as Green Space Place Type on Map 1 – Place Types and are mapped on Map 5 – Natural Heritage. However, Potential ESAs patches or other vegetation patches greater than 0.5 ha (as identified through subwatershed plans or other environmental studies) should be delineated and assessed for significance (as outlined in **Section 3**). It is important to note that mapping in **The London Plan** is dynamic in nature, and not all potential vegetation patches or those identified for protection may be included in the mapping at a given time. It is the responsibility of the proponent to determine potential vegetation patches for evaluation as part of the planning process and development application.

Appropriate expertise provided by a qualified professional is required to delineate ESA elements. For vegetation communities, the ELC system for Southern Ontario (Lee *et al.*, 1998) will be the standard protocol used to differentiate natural vegetation communities within patches. The term "area" in the context of an ESA refers to patches or patch clusters (i.e., the combined area of contiguous patches), which are defined during boundary delineation and included in the feature boundary).

Section 3.2 includes guidance related to the evaluation of ESAs.

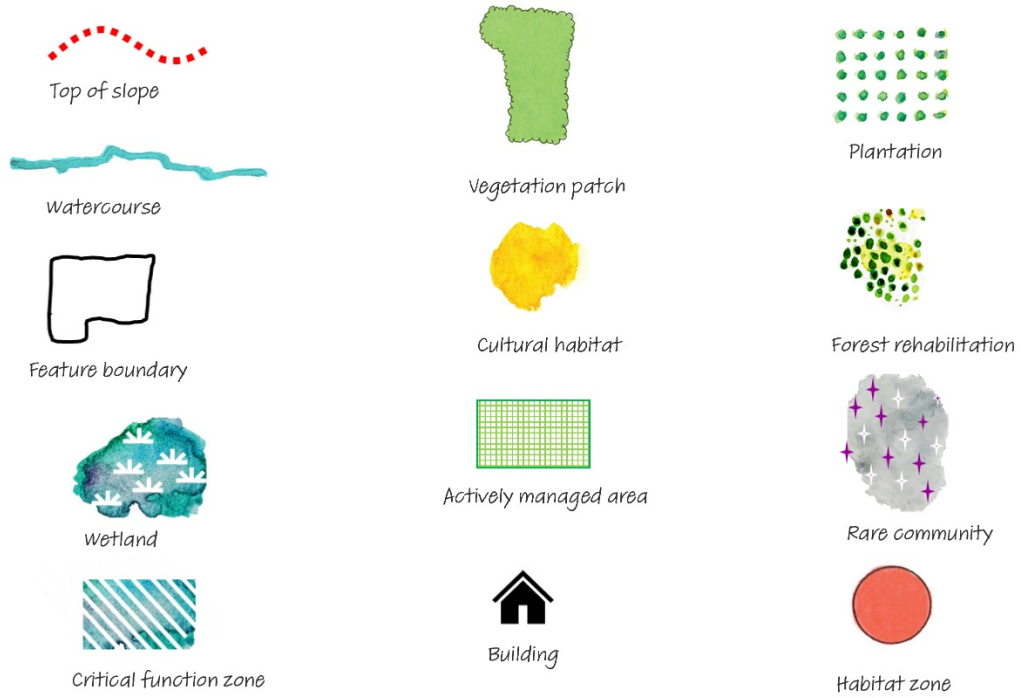
4.7 Boundary Delineation Guidelines

In general, vegetation patches have been identified through subwatershed plans or other environmental studies and have been mapped in **The London Plan** on Map 1 – Place Types and Map 5 – Natural Heritage. Vegetation patches that have been evaluated for significance may fall under the Woodland category or the ESA as a whole vegetation patch, or have specific components (features, e.g., wetlands) evaluated for significance.

As outlined in **The London Plan**, vegetation patches that have been evaluated are included as Green Space Place Type on Map 1 – Place Types and mapped as the corresponding natural heritage feature (e.g., as Significant Woodlands and woodlands) on Map 5 – Natural Heritage. However, Unevaluated Vegetation Patches or other vegetation patches greater than 0.5 ha (identified through subwatershed plans or other environmental studies) should be delineated and assessed for significance (as outlined in **Section 3**). It is important to note that mapping in **The London Plan** is dynamic in nature, and not all potential vegetation patches or those identified for protection may be included in the mapping at a given time. It is the responsibility of the proponent to determine potential vegetation patches for evaluation as part of the planning process and development application.

Figure 4.1: Guideline Legend

LEGEND:



DRY

The following guidelines outline the process for determining the feature boundary of a vegetation patch.

GUIDELINE 1: Species at Risk (SAR) habitat and Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH) **must be included within the feature boundary.**

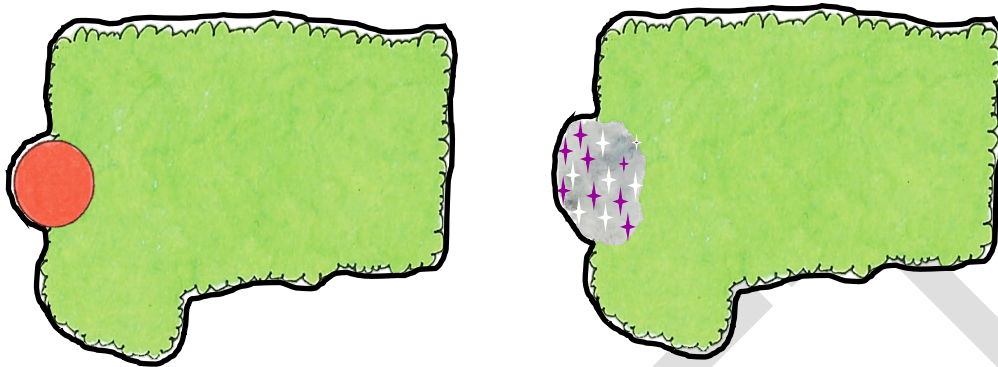


Figure 4.2: Guideline 1 Illustration

Conditions:

Confirmed SAR habitat (including associated habitat zones) is to be included within the feature boundary include habitat for Federal and Provincial SAR protected under the federal *Species at Risk Act* and provincial *Endangered Species Act*. For the City of London's policies related to SAR habitat, refer to **The London Plan – Policies 1325-1327**.

In addition to SAR habitat, all confirmed SWH is to be included as determined through ELC (Lee *et al.* 1998) and further assessed using the *Significant Wildlife Habitat Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E* (MNRF, 2015a) and the *Significant Wildlife Habitat Technical Guide* (MNRF, 2000b) and, for the City of London's policies related to SWH, refer to **The London Plan – Policies 1352-1355**.

Rationale:

SAR habitat and SWH are essential for maintaining critical life processes, biodiversity, and aiding in the protection and recovery of rare species/communities and SAR (MNRF, 2010a). Further, underrepresented or rare species and communities (i.e., SAR, SWH) are under pressure from habitat fragmentation and overall loss of habitat, therefore one important goal for ecological function when establishing/defining natural heritage features is to provide habitat to these rare species (MNRF, 2010a).

In regards to SAR habitat, a habitat zone is a feature or area used regularly for a key lifecycle requirement for a species or habitat that requires special protection. The vegetation in the habitat zone doesn't necessarily need to be of natural origins and could contain culturally influenced communities. The critical habitat of a plant species may extend to areas in the immediate vicinity of population that have similar soil, moisture, exposure, and community conditions.

Examples of habitat zones that may require special protection are:

- Old fields, hedgerows, and woodland edges that may be important habitat for American badger (*Taxidea taxus jacksoni*) maternal and other den sites, as well as migration corridors for the dispersal of young (Ontario American Badger Recovery Team, 2010); and,
- Sandy shorelines that provide critical nesting habitat for the Eastern Spiny Soft-shell Turtle (*Apalone spinifera*) often occurring along the Thames River.

GUIDELINE 2: Swamps, Marshes, Thicket Swamps, or other Untreed Wetland communities and their associated Critical Function Zones (CFZs) contiguous with a patch **must be included within the feature boundary** (inset d of **Figure 4.3**).

To be included in the patch boundary, the wetland communities must meet at least one of the following criteria:

- a) The wetland strengthens a linkage between natural areas by filling in a bay or connecting two or more patches or is contiguous with the patch;
- b) The wetland is located above the top-of-slope of stream corridor or ravine;
- c) The wetland connects a patch to a permanent, natural watercourse; or,
- d) The wetland CFZ is included within the feature boundary.

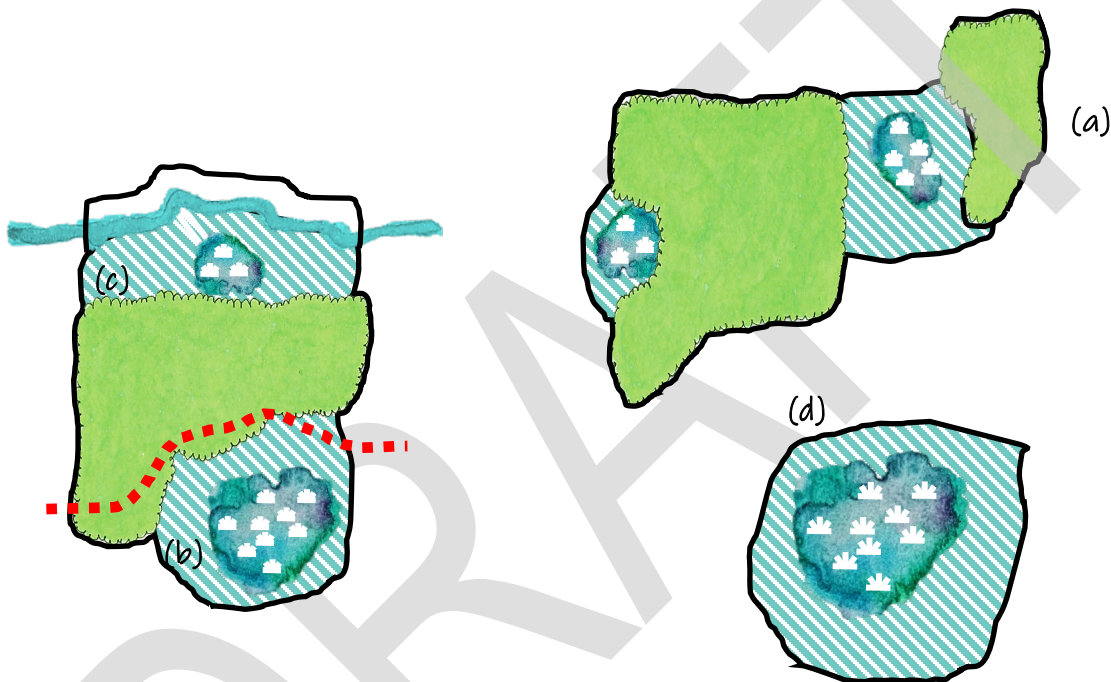


Figure 4.3: Guideline 2 Illustration

Conditions:

Although all wetlands are protected under the City of London’s policies related to PSWs, Wetlands, and Unevaluated Wetlands (**The London Plan** – Policies 1330-1336), marshes, thicket swamps, and other untreed wetlands (along with their associated CFZs) that meet the criteria above must be included within the overall vegetation patch boundary. All other wetlands, including PSWs, Wetlands, and Unevaluated Wetlands and their associated CFZs that do not meet the above criteria are to be delineated as their own vegetation patch. CFZs include non-wetland areas within which biophysical functions or attributes directly related to the wetland occur (Environment Canada, 2013). Reference to Environment Canada (2013) can be made for more information on determining specific CFZs, however review of the most up-to-date documents on CFZs should be conducted.

Rationale:

Wetlands provide important habitat for plants, fish and wildlife. Wetlands also influence the quality and temperature of water flowing through them and some wetlands provide storage capacity to offset peak flows associated with storm events.

CFZs are natural areas that surrounds wetlands can provide a suite of benefits to wetland function and to the species dependent on the wetland. In many cases, these natural areas, although they extend beyond the limits of the wetland, are inherently part of the wetland ecosystem and provide habitat for critical life processes to wetland species (Environment Canada, 2013).

GUIDELINE 3: Projections of naturalized vegetation **less than thirty meters (30 m) wide that extend from the main body of the patch:**

- a) **must** be included within the boundary if the projection includes a wooded ravine or valley with untreed or successional habitat below the top-of-slope; and
- b) **must** be included within the boundary if the projection provides linkage within the landscape.

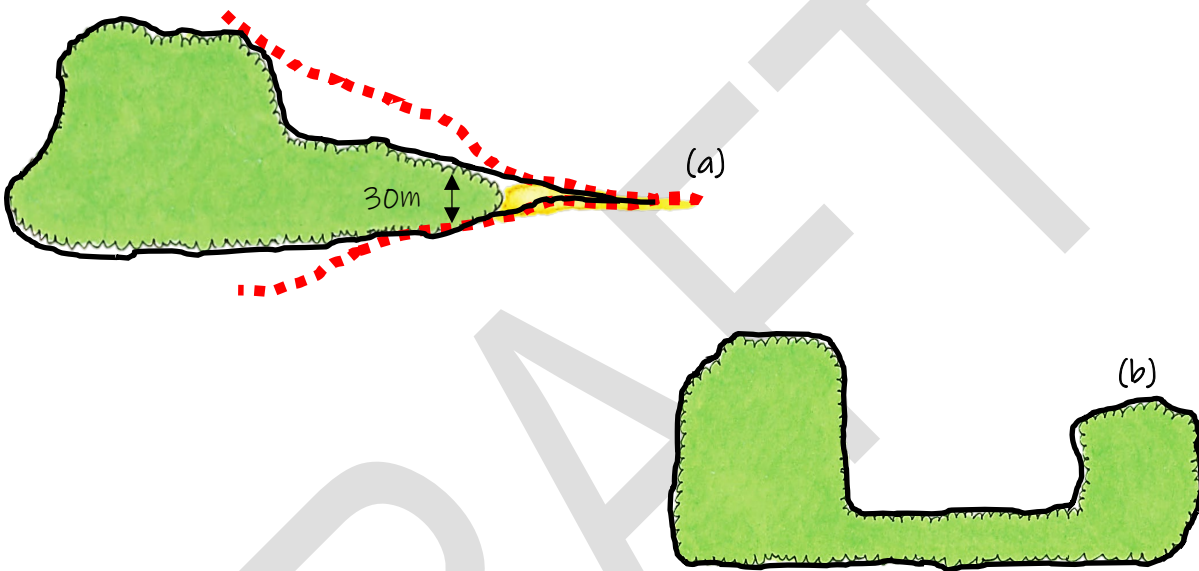


Figure 4.4: Guideline 3 Illustration

Rationale:

Ravine, valley, and upland corridors are important components of the NHS because they contain natural habitat, provide linkages, increase species richness and diversity, and facilitate movement and dispersion. Landscape connectivity (e.g., through linkages) is important in the maintenance of ecological function of patches and reduces landscape fragmentation that lead to smaller, more isolated features (MNRF, 2010a). For example, linkages can provide a dispersal route for species (i.e., connectivity) to complete different aspects of their life cycles, such as allowing reptiles and amphibians to travel between breeding and overwintering habitat (MNRF, 2010a).

GUIDELINE 4: All Watercourses **must be included within the feature boundary.**

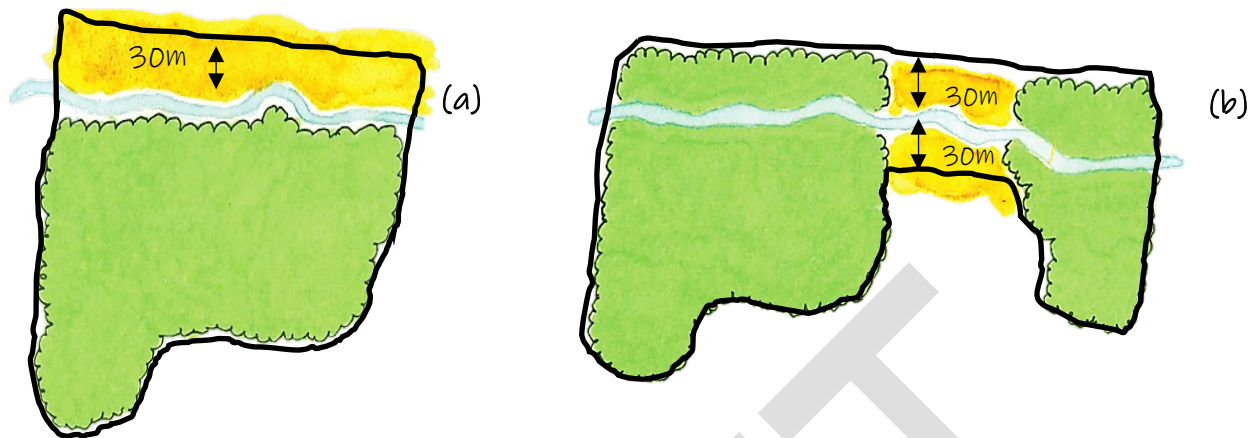


Figure 4.5: Guideline 4 Illustration

Figure 4.5 is an example of the inclusion of watercourses for defining vegetation feature boundaries, where a) depicts a watercourse at the edge of a vegetation patch and b) depicts a watercourse connecting two (2) patches.

Conditions:

The edges of the watercourse **must** be measured **from the high-water mark** and will include the following minimum corridor widths:

- 15 m on each side of small watercourses (valleylands);
- 30 m on each side of significant watercourses with a warm- or cool-water thermal regime (*The London Plan* – Policy 1350);
- 50 m on each side of watercourses with a cold-water thermal regimestreams;; or,
- 100 m on the side(s) of large rivers (Thames River, Medway Creek, Stoney Creek, Dingman Creek) where the patch occurs (City of London, 2011).

The high-water mark is defined as the average **highest** level that a watercourse or waterbody rises to and remains at long enough to alter the riparian vegetation (DFO, 2007; DFO, 2019). In flowing watercourses, this is often referred to as the “active channel” or “bank-full level”, usually reflecting the 1:2 year flood level (DFO, 2007).

Rationale:

Watercourses act as important habitat providing wildlife resources and functions as well as contributing substantially to connectivity within and between significant natural areas. Riparian areas adjacent to watercourses are important for protecting the water quality and ecological health of aquatic habitats. First order, headwater streams are recognized as indicators of hydrological processes. These hydrologic processes are important for ecological function and should be protected within NHS (MNRF, 2010a).

A watercourse is generally defined according to several federal and provincial Acts and Regulations and typically consists of a distinct (somewhat to well-defined) channel in which water naturally flows at some time of the year [i.e., permanent, intermittent, or ephemeral flow as defined by MNRF’s Stream Permanency Handbook for South-Central Ontario (MNRF 2013)]. This includes anthropogenically created / maintained / altered features as well as natural features.

GUIDELINE 5: Satellite woodlands that are less than 2 ha and are located within 100 m of another woodland patch:

- a) **must** be included within the boundary if the satellite contains Species at Risk or Significant Wildlife Habitat; and,
- b) **must** be included within the boundary if they contribute to biological diversity and ecological function of the other patch and/or act as stepping stone linkages within the greater landscape

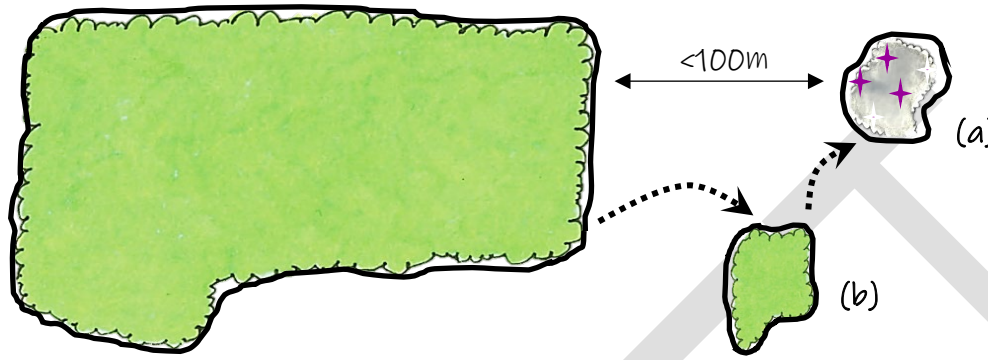


Figure 4.6: Guideline 5 Illustration

Conditions:

Contribution to biological diversity, ecological function, and connectivity may include, but is not limited to the following (MNR 2010a):

- the satellite supports native tree cover;
- the satellite is located adjacent to or contains a wetland;
- the satellite is located between two (2) larger patches that are within 250 metres of each other, where the land between the patches is absent of permanent barrier;
- the satellite meets the habitat needs of one or more species that are not met by the larger patch;
- the satellite contains a natural vegetation community type that is not already represented in the larger patch;
- the satellite supports or is dependent upon a surface- or ground-water connection that maintains fish or aquatic habitat in either patch; and,
- the satellite provides a temporary refuge that facilitates movement between habitats.

Rationale:

There is limited evidence to support the principle that large contiguous patches contain more biodiversity than multiple small patches of the same total area (Fahrig, 2019). Woodlands ≥ 4 ha are important in Middlesex County, and have the potential to support habitat for disturbance sensitive species (UTRCA, 2014; NHRM, 2010). Smaller woodlands have the potential to deliver multiple ecological services at higher performance levels per unit area than larger woodlands in agricultural landscapes (Valdés *et al.*, 2020). Further, multiple small, connected patches can support higher species richness, are more likely to contain wide-ranging taxa (e.g. predators), and have fewer extinctions compared to single large patches (Hammill & Clements 2020).

The presence of native conifer cover is considered important for providing wildlife shelter. Further, the importance of a woodland increases if it is located adjacent to a wetland or it contains a wetland, as

wetlands can increase vegetation diversity, provide important wildlife habitat features, and contribute to hydrological functions (Hilditch, 1993; Riley and Mohr, 1994).

Small woodlands that are in close proximity to one another or interspersed amongst larger habitat patches, may have value for area-sensitive birds and species with low mobility (Riley & Mohr 1994). Further, small woodlands located between natural heritage features or areas can act as stepping stones for movement of species, thus functioning as a linkage (MNRF, 2010a)

Clusters of patches that collectively meet several of the habitat needs of one or more species are generally more valuable than clusters of patches that meet fewer habitat needs (MNRF, 2010a). Natural areas that consist of several patches containing a diversity of native vegetation community types can sometimes provide better representation of the range of habitats than a single larger habitat patch (MNRF, 2010a; Fahrig, 2020).

GUIDELINE 6: Cultural meadows **must** be included if they meet one (1) of the following criteria:

- a) a portion of meadow habitat surrounds a feature on one or more sides, and provides improved ecological function to the patch by its inclusion;
- b) strengthen internal linkages in the patch by filling in "bays";
- c) connect a patch to a watercourse;
- d) connect two or more patches (inset d of **Figure 4.7**); or,
- e) are below the top-of-stable-slope in a stream corridor or ravine.

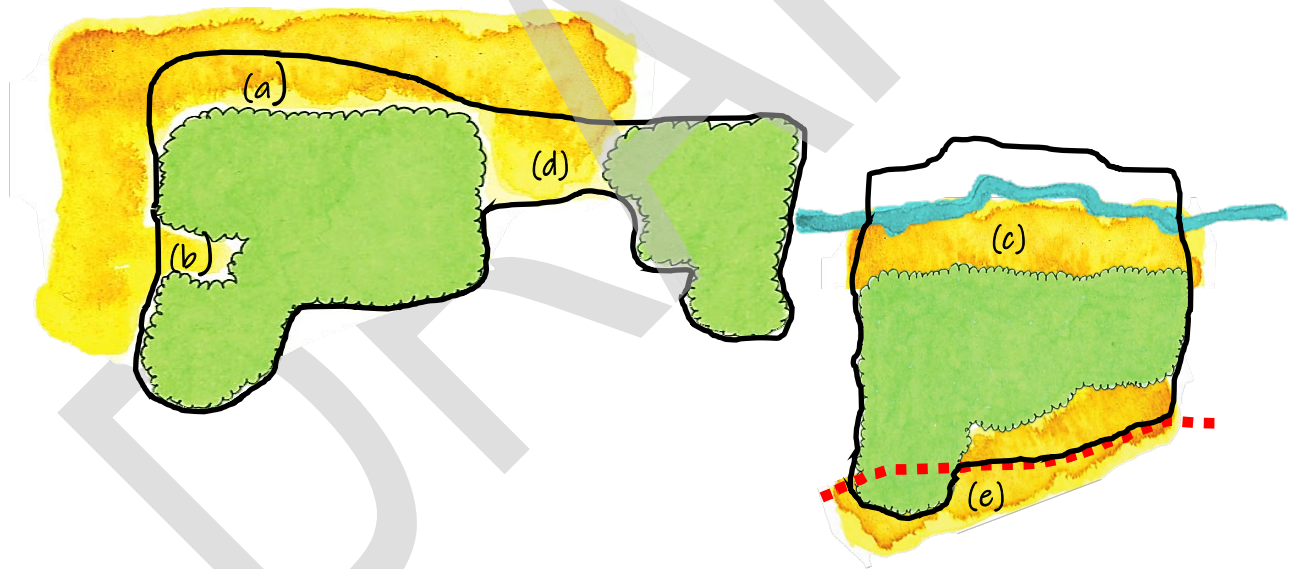


Figure 4.7: Guideline 6 Illustration

Condition:

A cultural habitat meeting any one of the above conditions is included in the vegetation patch boundary. However, it is not intended that the cultural habitat will occupy a large proportion of the total area of the patch being delineated.

Rationale:

Cultural habitats may act as significant supporting habitat to the patch, where the loss of such communities would result in loss of ecological integrity of the entire patch boundary. The inclusion of

cultural habitats may increase the biological diversity of the area if the other similar cultural habitat is not already present.

Cultural habitats may provide increased community and species diversity, important breeding and foraging wildlife habitat, landscape connections between naturalized areas, habitat for rare flora and fauna, and/or reduce negative effects from surrounding land-use. Cultural habitat adjacent to woodlands also has potential for rehabilitation and may contribute to a net environmental benefit in ecosystem health. Although cultural habitats are not pristine or unaffected by human activity, they have the potential to contribute natural values. This contribution is especially prevalent agriculturally-dominated landscapes, which are common southern Ontario (Geomatics International, 1995; Milne and Bennet, 2007).

Criteria and guidelines for evaluating the ecological significance of cultural habitat areas are provided in the Geomatics (1995) report "Management options for old-field sites in southern Ontario". These criteria address a range of issues including rare and endangered species, wildlife habitat, site productivity, successional stage, soil characteristics, site history and the relationship of a particular site to the surrounding landscape.

GUIDELINE 7: Plantations contiguous with patches of natural vegetation **must** be included in the feature boundary if they meet one (1) of the following criteria:

- a) was originally established for the purposes of forest rehabilitation or has been managed towards a natural forest or is developing/has developed characteristics of a natural forest, such as natural regeneration of native species.
- b) strengthens internal linkages or reduces edge to area ratios by filling in bays;
- c) connects a patch to a permanent watercourse;
- d) it connects two or more patches; or,
- e) it is below the top-of-slope in a stream corridor or ravine.

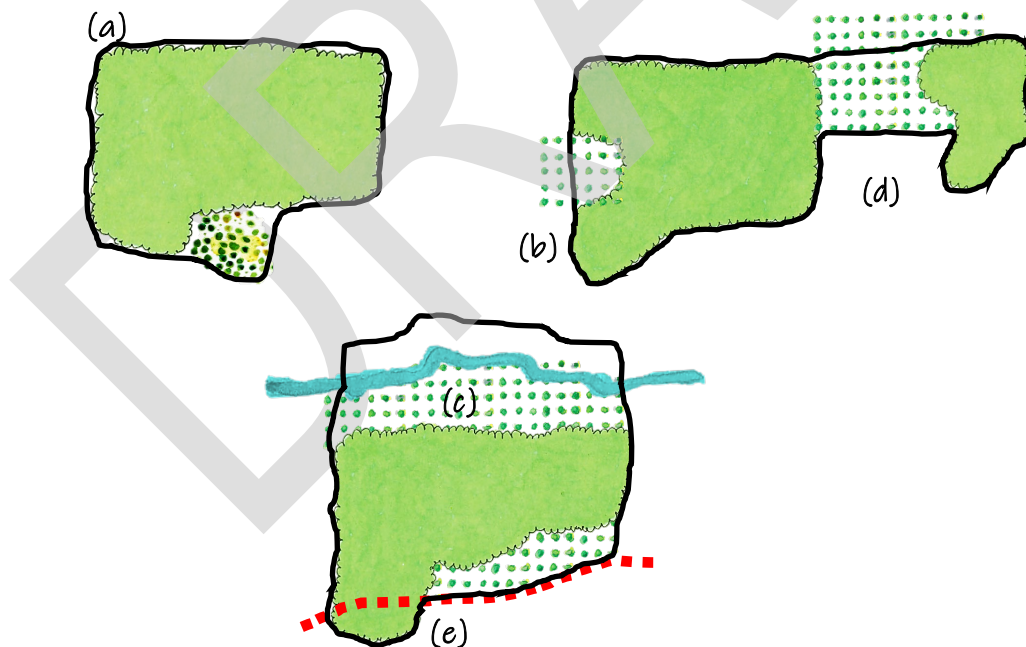


Figure 4.8: Guideline 7 Illustration

Example of the inclusion of plantations for defining feature boundaries where a) depicts a plantation providing protection for adverse effects, b) depicts a plantation filling in a 'bay', c) depicts a plantation connecting a vegetation patch to a watercourse, d) depicts a plantation connecting two (2) patches, and e) depicts a plantation below the top-of-slope of a stream corridor/ravine.

Rationale:

Cultural plantation communities may provide significant wildlife or supporting habitat for important wildlife processes (e.g., butterfly stopover areas, raptor nesting areas, etc.; MNRF, 2015a). Plantations form connections between naturalized areas, provide wildlife habitat, stabilize soils, and have the potential for regeneration to natural habitats.

GUIDELINE 8: Existing land uses within or adjacent to a patch are subject to the following boundary considerations:

- a) Existing heavily managed or manicured features that are surrounded on at least three sides by a patch are included in the feature boundary if they are less than one hectare (1 ha) in total area (**Figure 4.9**). Such features include, but are not limited to agricultural croplands, active pasture, golf courses, lawns, ornamental tree lots, gardens, nurseries, orchards, and Christmas tree plantations. Subsequent abandonment or potential for rehabilitation of patches larger than one hectare (1 ha) may qualify such areas for inclusion in the patch.; and,
- b) Existing residential building envelopes and institutional building envelopes surrounded on at least three sides by a patch are not affected by the protective designation. Building envelopes and access routes of existing structures within the patch must be determined on a site-specific basis.

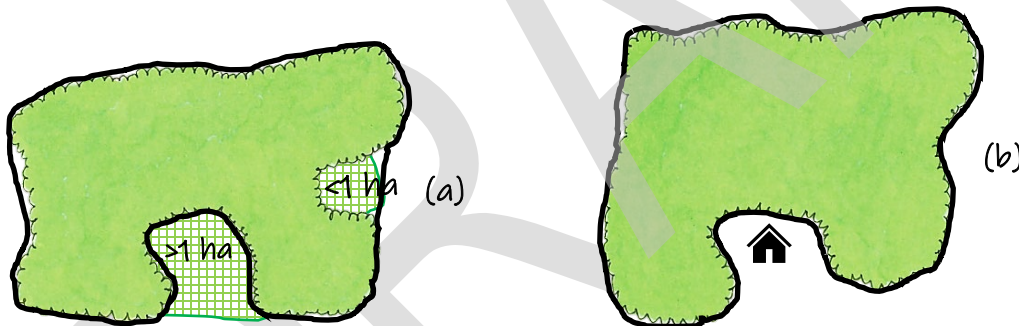


Figure 4.9: Guideline 8 Illustration

Rationale:

Existing heavily managed or manicured features (e.g., croplands, pastures, orchards, etc.) can provide a large number of ecological and environmental services. These services include providing wildlife habitat, carbon sequestration and climate change mitigation, protection from erosion, stormwater catchment, and protection from disturbance (Troy and Bagstad, 2009; FAO, 2013).

5. Determining Ecological Buffers

Ecological buffers are one of the primary planning tools that must generally be implemented to help ensure the protection of natural heritage features and their functions in accordance with **The London Plan** (see Environmental Policies 1412_to 1416). The following section provides guidance for: i) the determination of suitable site-specific buffer widths and ii) the implementation and management of site-specific buffer restoration and/or enhancement treatments.

This section defines a buffer (Section 5.1), outlines the approach to be taken in the City related to buffers (Section 5.2), and describes the process to be followed for buffer determination (Section 5.3) that must be followed in order for an EIS to be accepted by the City of London.

This process is best applied by professional Ecologists who have experience with, and an understanding of, the many interrelationships of the various natural heritage features and areas, and their ecological functions, that may be present and that are potentially affected by a development proposal.

5.1 Definition of a Buffer

Buffers are strips of land kept in a vegetated state that provide a physical separation between development and a protected natural heritage feature (MNRF, 2010b). The width of a buffer is to be determined based on the type of Natural Heritage Feature and its' functions as well as the potential impacts resulting from the proposed adjacent development. Buffers originate at the boundary of a Natural Heritage Feature and extend outwards to the limits of development (MNRF, 2010a; Carolinian Canada, 2000). In the case of wetlands, as described in **Section 4**, Critical Function Zones (CFZs) are included in the overall feature boundary. Therefore, for wetlands, the buffer is to originate at the external boundary of the CFZ. Buffers shall not be included within the limits of development, or within the boundary of the feature. Ecological buffers are not intended to contribute to feature-based compensation goals, should they be required. Buffers should not be treated as extensions of the natural feature to allow for management practices should they be required (MNRF, 2010a).

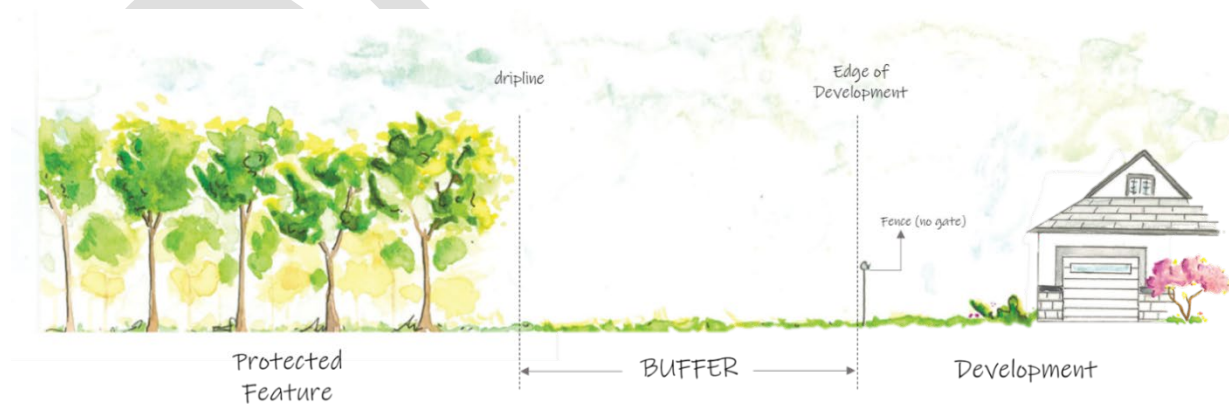


Figure 5.1: Illustration of a buffer implemented for the protection of a Natural Heritage Feature adjacent to a development.

Note that a setback is different from a buffer, although in some cases the natural feature buffer and setback may overlap in whole or in part. A natural feature setback is intended to account for physical constraints based on geotechnical assessments, identified hazards (Carolinian Canada, 2000), or other

physical constraints such as those related to flooding. For example, a property must be setback a certain distance from the stable top of slope for safety purposes and property protection. In cases where both physical setbacks and ecological buffers are required, the greater of the two will establish the development limit line.

Adjacent lands are also not synonymous with buffers, although buffers are often contained within the adjacent lands to natural heritage features and areas. As stated in the NHRM (MNRF 2010b), *“In contrast to adjacent lands, which are usually established before development is proposed (e.g., through official plan and or zoning by-law provisions), identified buffers should be determined once the nature of the development is known and the extent of potential impacts can be determined”*.

5.2 Approach

The process of determining a site-specific buffer width requires the consideration of information about the sensitivities and functions of the natural heritage feature and area(s) being considered and the nature and scope of the proposed adjacent land uses. The science of buffer efficacy is ever evolving. Since the science is constantly changing, the process outlined below is intended to allow for flexibility and the inclusion of new scientific information as it becomes available.

In general, the precautionary principle is to be used when it comes to the protection of features, functions, and species given that impacts may be documented decades after a development has been completed and *in situ* buffer efficacy is not yet well studied. However, in certain cases, the City and the Proponent, in consultation with any other applicable agencies, may agree to a buffer width less than that which is required as determined through the process outlined in **Section 5.3**.

Other techniques, including those outlined in *The London Plan* Policy 1415_, may be required in addition to the application of buffers to limit the impacts anticipated with proposed development.

At the City’s discretion, in consultation with any other applicable agencies, pathways may be permitted within the buffer provided that the buffer is of sufficient size (i.e., meeting the minimum requirements), remains naturalized outside of the pathway, and is supported by the recommendations of the approved EIS.

This approach is based on policies and guidance provided in *The London Plan* and the provincial *Natural Heritage Reference Manual* (MNRF, 2010b), with consideration for the policies of the Oak Ridges Moraine Conservation Plan (MMAH, 2017b) and Greenbelt Plan (MMAH, 2017a).

5.3 Buffer Determination Process

Table 5.1 below outlines the general step-by-step process to determine a site-specific buffer width for the protection of Natural Heritage Feature(s) within the City of London. Although ultimate buffer widths can only be confirmed at the site-specific EIS stage, where possible, preliminary buffers should be identified at the broader Subwatershed Study or Secondary Plan stage to provide an early and realistic determination of lands that may be suitable for development and so that opportunities for mitigation using buffers is available during the design of draft plans (MNRF, 2010b).

The following process has been developed primarily for application at the site-specific stage through an EIS, but many of the same steps and considerations could be applied at the broader Subwatershed Study or Secondary Plan stage with the understanding that refinements would need to be considered in the context of the EIS once the details of the proposed development are known.

5.3.1 Step 1 – Determine feature to be protected, delineate boundaries and determine potential impacts

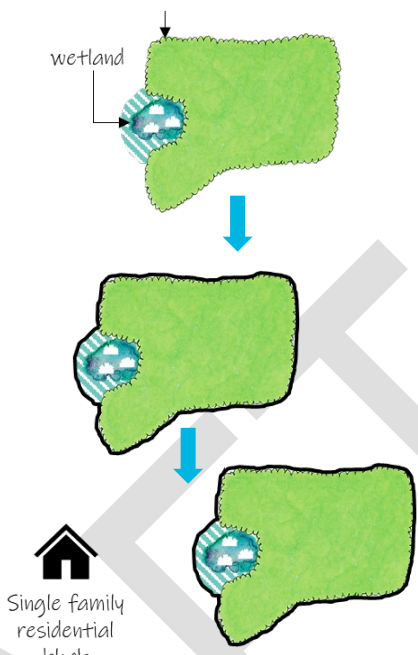
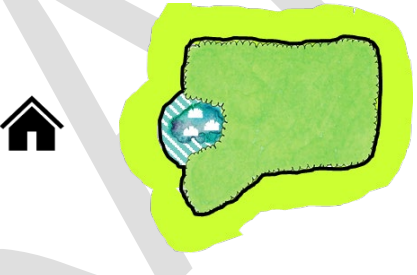
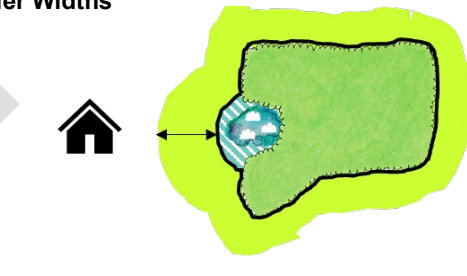
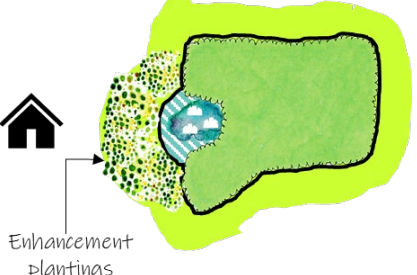
5.3.1.1 *What is being protected and what are their boundaries?*

Gaining an understanding of the protected Natural Heritage Feature(s) and its function(s) is the first step in the overall process of determining a site-specific buffer width. It is the responsibility of the professional undertaking the buffer width determination to complete a comprehensive background review and the appropriate field studies such that the various habitats, and the species that occupy those habitats, are well understood.

It should be noted that multi-disciplinary investigations may be required to understand the features, their functions and the interactions with different components of the environment. These may include, but are not limited to, ecological surveys (vegetation surveys, wetland evaluations, breeding bird surveys, amphibian call surveys, reptile surveys, bat habitat surveys, SWH surveys, etc.), hydrological studies, hydrogeological studies, geotechnical investigations, etc.

Direction related to boundary delineation and evaluation of the natural heritage features and areas that are part of the City's NHS is provided in **The London Plan** Environmental Policies and the supporting guidance as described in **Sections 3** and **4** of these EMGs.

Table 5.1: Site-specific Buffer Width Determination Process

<p>Step 1: Determine the feature to be protected, delineate feature boundaries and determine the potential impacts</p> <p>a) Collect the necessary information from the EIS and other associated studies to gain an understanding of the Natural Heritage Feature(s) and function(s) that are to be protected,</p> <p>b) delineate feature(s) boundaries, and</p> <p>c) determine the potential impacts of the proposed site alteration or development..</p>		<p>Example: Studies determined the presence of a Significant Woodland with corresponding wetland (including Critical Function Zone) per Section 2 and 3. Boundaries defined per Section 4. Proposed development is a single family residential subdivision consisting of twenty lots located on the west side of the feature.</p>
<p>Step 2: Apply the Minimum Buffer Widths</p> <p>Apply the minimum widths for the type(s) of natural heritage features that are being protected. Identified minimum buffer widths are to start at the delineated boundary of the natural heritage feature.</p>		<p>Minimum buffer widths applied per Table 5.2.</p>
<p>Step 3: Determination of Site-specific Buffer Widths</p> <p>Determine if a greater than minimum buffer width is required for the protection of the identified Natural Heritage Feature(s) and functions. Greater than minimum buffer widths are to start at the same point as Step 2, the delineated boundary of the Natural Heritage Feature(s).</p>		<p>Wetland found to support Species at Risk habitat, buffer width increased in the wetland area per Table 5.3.</p>
<p>Step 4: Buffer Enhancement</p> <p>Site-specific enhancement within the buffer area; the objective being to enhance the functioning of the buffer and to minimize overall potential negative effects to the protected feature(s) and functions.</p>		<p>Enhancement plantings per Section 5.4 applied in area of Natural Feature that is most sensitive.</p>

5.3.1.2 What are the potential development-derived Impacts?

Understanding the proposed development and the elements that may affect a Natural Heritage Feature(s) and its function(s) is the responsibility of the professional undertaking the Buffer Determination Process. Buffer width(s) should be based on the functions and sensitivities of the feature(s) and the type(s) and scope of development adjacent to a Natural Heritage Feature and the potential development-derived effects that can reasonably be anticipated. For example, studies have demonstrated significant impacts to forests with adjacent residential development including those associated with off-trail use leading to compaction and erosion of soils, changes to hydrological regimes, loss and damage to vegetation, reductions in the regeneration success of trees and the spread of exotic plants and animals (McWilliams et al., 2012).

When determining the potential effects of a proposed development, refer to **Section 2**.

5.3.2 Step 2 – Apply Minimum Buffer Widths

The ultimate width of the buffer will depend on the local conditions and sensitivities of the protected feature, the anticipated impacts associated with the change in adjacent land use, and the impacts that a buffer can, and cannot, reasonably be expected to mitigate (Beacon, 2012). As determined through a review of current policies and literature, **Table 5.2** outlines the required minimum buffer widths that are considered necessary to maintain the natural, physical and chemical characteristics of natural heritage features (MNRF, 2010b). Depending on the sensitivities of the natural heritage features(s) being considered and the type of development, these required minimum widths may not provide sufficient protection. Therefore, additional buffer width may be necessary to maintain the various biological components of natural heritage features (MNRF, 2010b), as outlined in **Section 5.3.3**.

Table 5.2¹: Required Minimum Buffer Widths for Protected Natural Heritage Components

Natural Heritage Component	Required Minimum ²
Coldwater and Cold-water Fish Habitat	30 metres
Warm-water Fish Habitat	15 metres
Provincially Significant Wetlands (PSW), Wetlands	30 metres
Wetlands less than 0.5 ha	less than 30 metres
Significant Woodlands	30 metres
Significant Woodlands less than 2 ha	less than 30 m
Woodlands	less than 10 metres
Woodlands less than 2 ha	less than 10 metres
Significant Valleylands and Valleylands	Required minimum for the component of the NHS

¹ Table 5-2 provides a summary of literature and policy citations for minimum buffer widths. These do not represent the full compliment of literature/policy documents that are currently available. Table 5.2 should be updated every five (5) to 10 years incorporating, where applicable, updated and current research at the time.

² For natural heritage features, minimum buffers to be measured from the Feature Boundary (see **Section 4**).

Natural Heritage Component	Required Minimum ²
Environmentally Significant Areas	Required minimum for the component of the NHS
Upland Corridors and Meadows	5 metres

For unevaluated features a 30 m buffer is to be applied until it can be determined what the NHS component it falls under.

Minimum buffers for the Habitat of Endangered and Threatened Species, as well as Significant Wildlife Habitat, will vary on a case-by-case basis as the minimum width will depend on a range of factors including the species identified and their lifecycle processes. Buffers should be determined on a case-by-case basis with consideration for the applicable provincial guidance and, in the case of Endangered and Threatened Species, in consultation with the MECP.

5.3.3 Step 3 – Determination of Site-Specific Buffer Widths

Minimum buffers as outlined in **Section 5.3.2** should generally be sufficient for the protection of identified natural heritage features and their associated functions. However, an EIS may recommend a buffer width different from the minimum based on the sensitivity of the feature and the nature of the proposed adjacent development. Some key site factors drawn from the current and applicable literature that should be considered in relation to potential increases from the required minimums are provided below.

- Site-specific drainage patterns and flows, with sheet flows towards a feature more readily intercepted / slowed by a vegetated buffer than channelled flows (e.g., Castle and Johnson 2000; Sheldon *et al.*, 2005 as cited in Beacon 2012), with this factor being closely related to slope and soil type;
- Slope, with vegetated buffer effectiveness generally being reduced with increasing slope, particularly in excess of 15% (e.g., Schueler 1987, Norman 1998 as cited in Beacon 2012); and
- Soil type and related infiltration capacity, with soils with better drainage and more organic matter providing more effective

Other factors that can help improve buffer effectiveness and mitigate the need for potential increases from the required minimums are provided below.

- Vegetative composition of buffers, with well-vegetated buffers that mimic the composition of the feature being protected expected to be the most effective (Beacon 2012); and
- The presence of design features – such as a continuous fence, formal trails along the feature edge with some barriers, bioswales, berms– that effectively prevent encroachments into the protected feature (e.g., McWilliam *et al.* 2011 as cited in Beacon 2012, can also cite the Beacon 2014 paper based on local research).

As the impacts of adjacent development become better understood and more research is conducted on the ecology of various features, buffer requirements may change. Therefore, current literature may also be consulted to review the impacts relevant to the feature under consideration (MNR, 2010b). Ideal sources include studies designed to determine the impacts of an anthropogenic activity on biological systems, and comprehensive reviews or meta-analyses related to natural resource management. Such studies can be located in peer-reviewed academic journals, statements and reports from reputable experts and / or expert bodies (such as Environment Canada and Climate Change (ECCC) and the MNR), standard textbooks or handbooks and reference guides. City of London Ecologist Planners may recommend appropriate sources.

Table 5.3³: Criteria for the Determination of Variation from Required Minimum Buffer Widths

Criteria	Rationale	Literature
Landscape		
Connected within the Landscape	Greater than minimum buffer width required for natural heritage features that are well-connected within the overall landscape.	Lemieux <i>et al.</i> , 2021; Hilty <i>et al.</i> , 2020; Powney <i>et al.</i> , 2012
<p>Ecological connectivity is the unimpeded movement of species and the flow of natural processes that sustain life on Earth. While important in its own right to maintain species interactions and gene flows, connectivity conservation is also vital to facilitate species movement and adaptation in response to climate-induced ecological changes (Lemieux <i>et al.</i>, 2021; Hilty <i>et al.</i>, 2020). The more well-connected populations are, the greater the opportunity for dispersal, colonization and re-colonisation of habitat patches, reducing the risk of extinction and maintaining biological diversity in systems that have been fragmented (Powney <i>et al.</i>, 2012; Hilty <i>et al.</i>, 2020).</p> <p>Natural heritage features that are considered well-connected are features where there are vegetated or natural corridors (e.g. strips of natural vegetation, hedgerows, and watercourses). In these cases, document any hedgerows or strips of natural vegetation that are located within and outside the feature boundaries, as defined per Section 4. When documenting these features, include species composition, as well as overall canopy height and width.</p>		
Features and Functions		
Presence of Significant Wildlife Habitat	Greater than minimum buffer width may be required when Significant Wildlife Habitat in accordance with criteria schedules for ecoregion 7e are present (MNRF, 2015a).	MNRF, 2015a; Environment Canada, 2013; MNRF, 2010a;
<p>The presence of Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH) indicates specific conditions that are enabling that type of habitat to be present and therefore, a higher degree of protection may be required. Consultation with the City of London is required.</p> <p>Buffers for the protection of SWH must be based on evidence and include reference to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Significant Wildlife Habitat Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E (MNRF, 2015a) • COSEWIC Reports where applicable • COSSARO Reports where applicable • Environment Canada’s <i>How much Habitat is Enough?</i> (Environment Canada, 2013) • Significant Wildlife Habitat Mitigation Support Tool (MNRF, 2014b) • Various independent academic journal articles 		
Presence of Species at Risk	Greater than minimum buffer width may be required when species considered Endangered or Threatened per the Endangered Species Act are present.	Environment Canada, 2013; various COSEWIC and COSSARO reports; MNRF, 2010b
<p>The presence of an Endangered or Threatened species indicates specific conditions that are enabling that species to survive and therefore, a higher degree of protection may be required. If it is determined that a SAR</p>		

³ Table 5.3 will be updated every five to 10 years to incorporate, where applicable, updated and current research.

Criteria	Rationale	Literature
<p>is negatively affected by a proposed development, a permit under the <i>Endangered Species Act</i> may be required. In the case of any SAR, consultation with both the City of London as well as MECP is required.</p>		
<p>Buffers for the protection of Endangered and Threatened species must be based on evidence and include reference to:</p>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ontario government’s SAR database • COSEWIC Reports • COSSARO Reports • Environment Canada’s “How much Habitat is Enough?” • Various independent academic journal articles 		
<p>Note that any habitat or species information for Endangered and Threatened species is sensitive information and should not be identified in public documents (MNRF, 2010b).</p>		
<p>Edge Conditions⁴</p>		
<p>Slope/Overland Flow</p>	<p>Greater than minimum buffer width is required where slope is greater than 5%.</p>	<p>Mitchell & Crook, 1996</p>
<p>Understanding the slope and direction of flow aids in predicting areas that may receive more water than others, help determine appropriate buffer plantings, as well as pre-construction conditions that need to remain the same post-construction. Measure slope using a geo-referencing tool or handheld clinometer.</p>		
<p>The following are buffer width requirements starting at the edge of a Natural Heritage Feature where slope is:</p>		
<p>5-15%</p>	<p>30 m buffer</p>	
<p>16-30%</p>	<p>50 m buffer</p>	
<p>31-45%</p>	<p>70 m buffer</p>	
<p>>45%</p>	<p>90 m buffer</p>	
<p>Development Conditions</p>		
<p>Development Type</p>	<p>Greater than minimum buffer width may be required as addressed and identified by the EIS based on specific development conditions (e.g., stressors).</p>	<p>McWilliam et al., 2012; Sawatzky and Fahrig, 2019; Environment Canada, 2013</p>
<p>Encroachment into natural features is a common impact associated with residential development. Buffers provide some area for minor encroachment without affecting actual features (MNRF, 2010a). Stressors such as human disturbance (e.g., landscaping, dumping, urban wildlife, noise) shall be considered when establishing buffer width.</p>		
<p>The following has been adapted from Environment Canada’s Recommended Buffer table in <i>How much Habitat is Enough</i>.</p>		

⁴ An edge is the border, or transition zone between a natural heritage feature and adjacent land. The condition of an edge contributes to the resistance and resilience of a natural heritage feature, where ecological structure, function and connectivity contribute to a feature’s ability to resist and recover from anthropogenic disturbance.

5.3.4 Step 4 - Buffer Restoration and Enhancement

Once a site-specific buffer width is determined following Steps 1 through 3 as outlined in **Sections 5.3.1, 5.3.2 and 5.3.3**, the required buffer restoration and enhancement measures can be defined based on the characteristics of the adjacent natural heritage feature(s).

5.3.4.1 Buffer Enhancement Strategy

In most cases, the land set aside for the site-specific buffer will be comprised of farmed agricultural lands, mown grass or abandoned land with ruderal vegetation. In some redevelopment scenarios it may be open gravel or paved. It is the responsibility of the professional undertaking the buffer determination process to document and understand the edge conditions of an identified Natural Heritage Feature, including what is present within the adjacent lands so that appropriate enhancement strategies can be developed and implemented.

The intent of the strategy should be to reduce edge effects, improve buffer functions (e.g., through restoration or enhancement of site-appropriate native vegetation), and enhance habitat connectivity to build resilience of the Natural Heritage Feature(s) being protected.

When determining a buffer enhancement strategy, the following should be considered:

- Allocate a greater proportion of buffer enhancements in areas that reduce the total edge: area ratio of the feature (i.e., bays and projections);
- Allocate a greater proportion of buffer enhancements to areas which minimize climatic, structural or anticipated impact gradients (e.g., consider the orientation of the patch to flows in the landscape such as prevailing winds and sources of disturbance and encroachment such as urban cats, wind-dispersed seeds, noise, light and chemical pollution); and
- Allocate a greater proportion of buffer enhancements proximal to areas that contain sensitive feature(s) and functions.

Table 5.4 outlines buffer enhancement measures that shall be implemented to reduce of negative edge effects, protect features and their ecological functions, and improve habitat quality.

Table 5.4: Potential Buffer Enhancement Measures

Buffer Enhancement Measure
<p>Native Plantings</p> <p>Plantings of native tree, shrub, seed mixes and individual herbaceous species within a site-specific buffer width increases the structural gradient and reduces increased exposure to light, moisture and wind conditions. Natural heritage features with a dense multi-layered edge structure are more likely to maintain interior conditions after experiencing anthropogenic disturbance (Fry and Sarlöv-Herlin, 1997; Powney et al., 2012). Further, the physical separation of development from a natural feature reduces the penetration of light and noise into the natural feature. This will be further reduced if the buffer supports dense vegetation (MNRF, 2010b).</p> <p>Increasing the structural gradient means having vegetation at various heights in various areas. This is especially important for treed natural heritage features with simple, open edges as well as features that are smaller in size with low connectivity. A multi-layered approach with respect to native plantings increases habitat suitability for resident species as well as landscape connectivity (Fry and Sarlöv-Herlin, 1997).</p>

Buffer Enhancement Measure

Vegetated buffers slow down surface runoff and absorb nutrients and chemicals used for lawn care, agriculture and road maintenance, thus reducing impacts on natural features. If runoff is not controlled, impacts can include soil erosion/sedimentation, destruction of vegetation, and flushing of nests or eggs of amphibians and waterfowl. This is particularly important to adjacent wetlands and aquatic features where nutrients can enrich the system and lead to an abundance of nuisance weeds and/or algae (MNRF, 2010b).

Recommended native plantings should:

- enhance diversity with consideration for species shifts resulting from warming temperatures due to climate change;
- enhance diversity with consideration for existing and future pest impacts to tree/ shrub species;
- add complexity to both horizontal and vertical structure;
- consider mosaics of different trees and shrub species;
- consider light and noise impacts by creating a physical barrier;
- use native pollinator friendly seed mixes to promote the establishment of pollinator and foraging habitat; and
- select species appropriate to the species composition of the natural heritage feature(s) being protected as well as the local soil composition and structure.

Management of Invasive Plants

Removal of invasive plants within the buffer area and within 10m of the edge of the identified Natural Heritage Feature will improve overall species diversity. Priority species that must be removed include: common buckthorn, glossy buckthorn, common reed (Phragmites), Japanese knotweed, dog strangling vine, and giant hogweed (City of London, 2017). Those on the watch list should also be removed in accordance with the City of London Invasive Plant Management Strategy.

Where appropriate, targeted invasive species management and restoration extending into the feature itself should also be considered.

Other Structural Enhancements

Creation and installation of site and feature-appropriate habitat enhancements such as: addition of woody debris piles, pits and mounds, bird and bat structures, reptile nesting areas and hibernacula. Note that dead wood is important habitat and food resources for many birds, insects and lower plant species where woody biomass should be retained.

5.4 Prohibited and Permitted Uses within a Buffer

Buffers are generally to be kept in a predominantly naturalized state and no permanent structure or part of a development is to occur within a buffer. The following exceptions that may be approved where buffers greater than the minimums have been recommended at the City's discretion, and in consultation with the appropriate agencies, where needed:

- Pedestrian pathways in the outer half of the buffer with the remaining buffer to be restored and naturalized; and
- Low impact development measures (such as bioswales, infiltration trenches) that are compatible with the buffer function and the protection of the feature(s).

Buffers are not to count towards feature-based compensation measures that may be required. Amenities such as gazebos and other installations that do not provide environmental enhancement are not permitted

in buffers. At the City's discretion, and subject to the completion of an EIS wherein a site-specific buffer equal to, or greater than the minimum buffer (as described in **Table 5.2**) has been recommended, a pathway may be incorporated within the buffer provided the buffer remains, or is naturalized.

DRAFT

6. Ecological Replacement and Compensation

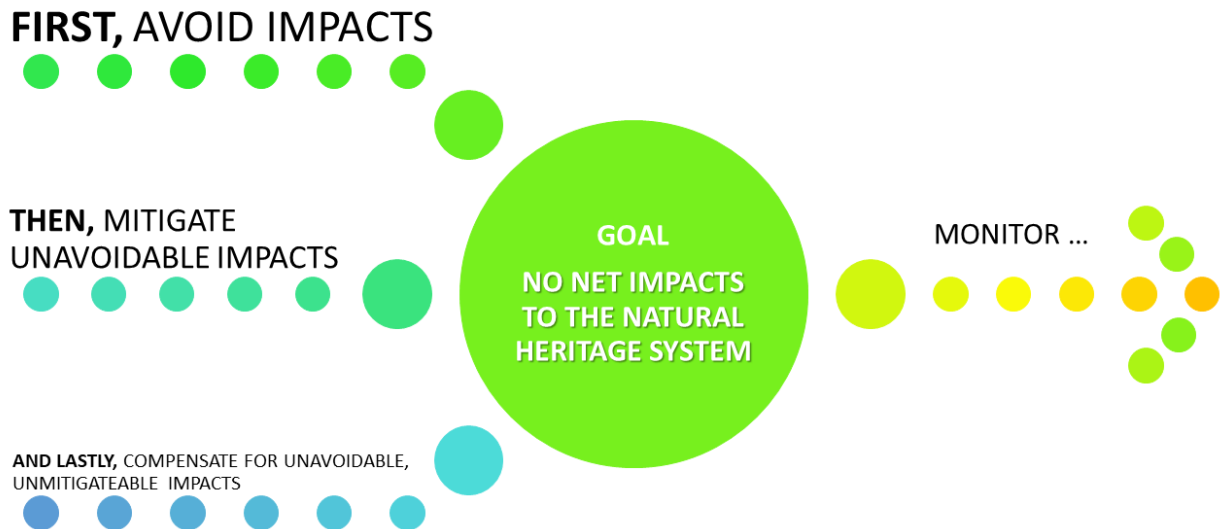
The City of London, like many urbanizing jurisdictions in southern Ontario, is expected to accommodate a certain amount of growth over the coming decades and beyond. While this presents opportunities for the City, it also means ever increasing pressures on the remaining natural heritage features and areas within its urban boundary.

The London Plan includes policies intended to help ensure what is significant and valued in London from a natural heritage perspective is sustained for the long term. The bulk of the Environmental Policies in **The London Plan** require the outright protection of natural heritage features and areas confirmed as components of the NHS (as per **Section 3** and **Section 4**), including buffers as appropriate (as per **Section 5**). However, there are some limited cases and contexts in which removal of part, or all, of a natural heritage feature or area may be contemplated through the planning process. In these cases, replacement and/or compensation for that feature and/or area is required in the City of London with the intent of achieving no net loss or, preferably, a net environmental benefit in natural heritage area and/or ecological functions (as per **Section 2.6**). This section of the guidelines is provided to facilitate the implementation of such requirements, where applicable.

Negative impacts to natural heritage features and areas identified for protection can generally be avoided, minimized, and mitigated at the site specific scale with adequate technical knowledge, compromise and collaboration applied through the planning process. However, under some circumstances, residual damage to natural heritage features and their functions is unavoidable. After first exhausting all options for avoidance (as illustrated in **Figure 6.1**), followed by minimization and mitigation of impacts, portions of (or entire) natural heritage features may be approved for removal under the condition that ecological compensation take place to ensure that there are “no net negative impacts.”

This section has drawn on the *Guideline for Determining Ecosystem Compensation* developed by Toronto and Region Conservation Authority (TRCA, 2018), as well as other relevant and current technical and scientific sources. Although the EMGs are well established and have been applied in the City since 2007 with this version representing an update, this particular chapter is new and is expected will be updated in response to emerging science and / or findings of monitoring applicable to the City of London.

Figure 6.1: Illustration of the required approach whereby all options for avoiding and / or mitigating impacts must be explored with the City before compensation can be considered



6.1 Context and Process

This section provides the policy context, the high-level scientific and technical context and the process for developing and implementing an Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan in the City of London.

6.1.1 Policy Context

From a natural heritage perspective, the fundamental policy “test” used as a basis for approving – or rejecting – a development proposal in Ontario is what is referred to as the “no negative impacts” test based on the language from the Provincial Policy Statement (MMAH 2020) which states: “Development and site alteration shall not be permitted in [insert the feature(s) in question] unless it has been demonstrated that there will be no negative impacts on the natural features or their ecological functions”. This language is carried forward into The London Plan for the various components of the NHS, and further defined through these guidelines as proposals that are demonstrated to be able to result in no net negative impacts (as per Section 2.6).

Ecological replacement and compensation will be approved on a case by case basis subject to all applicable Federal, Provincial and municipal policies.

Replacement and compensation of natural heritage feature(s), where permitted by the City, shall be implemented on at least a one-for-one (1:1) land-area basis (as per **The London Plan** Policies 1334, 1342B, 1401 and 1402) and, at a minimum, aim to replace any ecological functions associated with the removed feature. The only exception to these requirements is for small wetlands (i.e., less than 0.5 ha) when less than 1:1 may be considered if the proposed compensation will provide a net gain or net environmental benefit to the NHS (as per **The London Plan** Policies 1334_1 and 1334_2).

These guidelines do not supersede and are to be implemented in conjunction with other applicable restoration, rehabilitation and / or replacement compensation policies and regulations including:

- **The London Plan** Management, Restoration and Rehabilitation Priorities Policies (1417 a through j)
- **The London Plan** tree replacement Policies (399_4, a through e, 401_13) and
- Overall Benefit Permits issued under the *Endangered Species Act* and/or the *Fisheries Act*.

There may be cases where a portion of the impact to a feature or function is compensated through one mechanism while the remaining impact is compensated through a different mechanism. For example, compensation required through the *Endangered Species Act* may address impacts to one particular species but may not compensate for all of the ecological structures and functions that will be lost. In such cases, determining the additional compensation required can be accomplished through these guidelines and in consultation with the City.

Furthermore, in cases where replacement and compensation has been approved in principle by the City but cannot be fully accommodated on the subject lands, **The London Plan** Management, Restoration and Rehabilitation Priorities Policies 1418 through 1420 may help guide the identification of alternative areas for such works.

6.1.2 Scientific and Technical Context

Ecological replacement and compensation are approaches that can be adopted to achieve no net loss and net environmental benefit through the creation, restoration and / or enhancement of natural heritage features and functions to compensate for those which will be removed or disturbed elsewhere (Brown *et al.*, 2013; Morrison-Saunders and Pope, 2013). No net loss and net environmental benefit are outcomes of compensation for unavoidable losses of biodiversity and/or habitat which are considered neutral or positive, respectively (Bull and Brownlie, 2017). There has been an important shift in replacement and compensation policies away from focussing on replacement and towards focussing on net environmental benefit to improve the short and long-term outcomes of biodiversity offsetting (Bull and Brownlie, 2017; Maron *et al.*, 2018) and, also, to incorporate something of a safety net for situations where the proposed replacement takes longer than anticipated to function as planned. Thus, the goal of replacement and compensation in City of London is to obtain a net environmental benefit, wherever feasible.

Ecological features and systems are highly complex, and although some of the simpler feature types that occur in London and southern Ontario can be replicated reasonably well, it requires a good technical understanding of the feature's key requirements, applied experience implementing the habitat creation, enhancement or restoration works, and a commitment to post-installation management and monitoring (also see **Section 6.6.2**). Consequently, although most ecological replacement and compensation projects have the objective of no net loss, in reality achieving no net loss of biodiversity and ecological functions can be very challenging (Bekessy *et al.*, 2010; Gibbons *et al.*, 2015; Simmonds *et al.*, 2019). Therefore, area compensation ratios of greater than 1:1 can be necessary to help ensure full replacement of ecological structure and functions (zu Ermgassen *et al.*, 2019). In addition, replacement and compensation projects require long-term monitoring to assess progress towards no net loss or net environmental benefit, and may require additional adaptive management actions to achieve the established ecological objectives.

6.2 Approval Process

Natural Heritage Features and Areas for Consideration

Through the planning and development process, certain natural features and areas confirmed for inclusion within the City's NHS that are not protected by other provincial or federal regulations may be permitted to be impacted by the planning approval authority (in this case, the City of London), but only in cases where avoidance of negative impacts is not possible and option for mitigation of negative unavoidable impacts are limited or not feasible. In all cases, compensation is to be explored as a last

resort, as illustrated in **Figure 6.1**, and will generally only be contemplated if the replacement or compensation is expected to fully replicate the extent and functions of the existing feature, or to provide an enhancement as compared to the existing feature.

As summarized in **Table 2.1**, the City is responsible for confirming the following natural heritage features and areas within its NHS:

- Wetlands (excluding Provincially Significant Wetlands)
- Environmentally Significant Areas
- Significant Woodlands and Woodlands
- Significant Valleylands and Valleylands
- Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH)
- Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs), and
- Upland Corridors.

The following guidance is intended to help implement ecological replacement and/or compensation, where the policies permit and where City agrees to consider it, for the above features.

Notably, these guidelines do **not** apply to or provide guidance related to replacement, compensation or rehabilitation of watercourses or Fish Habitat. Natural heritage features that are confirmed by other provincial or federal authorities (i.e., Fish Habitat, Habitat of Endangered Species and Threatened Species, Provincially Significant Wetland and Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest) may also be impacted in accordance with the applicable provincial or federal regulations, in part or in whole. In these cases, compensation or comparable activities may be permitted, with the specifics (not addressed in to be in conformance with the applicable provincial or federal regulations and in consultation with the applicable regulatory authority.

Approval Process for Feature Replacement / Compensation

Ecological compensation may be permitted and approved as part of an EIS under the *Planning Act*, or through an EIS or comparable Environmental Study completed in support of the installation or expansion of public infrastructure through the *Environmental Assessment* process. In all cases, ecological compensation for NHS components under the City's jurisdiction will not be approved as the 'default' and will only be considered if unavoidable loss remains once the protection hierarchy has been exhausted (as illustrated in **Figure 6.1**).

Prior to the approval of an application containing proposed ecological replacement and / or compensation, the proponent shall demonstrate the following:

- Compliance with all applicable policies and legislation;
- That the proposed compensation achieves "no negative impacts" as outlined in the *Provincial Policy Statement*;
- That all efforts to avoid, minimize, and mitigate have been taken and why impacts are unavoidable;
- No negative impacts, no net loss, and/or net environmental benefit;
- That the proposed ecological compensation is within the same subwatershed in close proximity to the original feature (preferred), or in an area that will provide a net environmental benefit to the NHS to maximize connectivity and linkages; and,
- That a proposed Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan is included within or as an Appendix to an EMP (as described in **Section 2.6, 6.3, and 7.2**).

In instances where ecosystem replacement or compensation has been approved in principle by City Staff (and the applicable conservation authority where the feature calls within their regulated areas), the proponent must retain a Consulting Ecologist, potentially with one or more experts from other related

disciplines (e.g., Landscape Architect, Arborist, Registered Professional Forester, Engineer, Hydrogeologist, Geotechnical Consultant) to develop and oversee the implementation and monitoring of the Replacement and Compensation Plan.

It is strongly recommended that once the City agrees in principle to replacement and compensation, that the proponent develop and get in principle approval of a Concept Plan before moving forward with any detailed plans or designs.

No removals of part of all of a natural heritage feature and / or area may proceed prior to approval of the Replacement and Compensation Plan. *This plan shall outline an approach and provide detailed plans that attempt to replicate, to the extent possible and without significant delay or lag time, the same ecosystem structure and associated level of ecosystem functions that are to be lost, in both the private land development process (under the Planning Act) and the public infrastructure process (under the Environmental Assessment Act) (TRCA, 2018).*

Ecological Buffers and Feature Replacement / Compensation

Ecological buffers required for NHS components identified and requiring protection on the subject lands (as per **Section 5**) are not to be counted towards fulfilling any agreed-to replacement or compensation of other NHS features, or parts of features approved for removal.

In addition, replacement and compensation features will require buffers wherever the feature is to be abutting a non-natural land use (e.g. road, parking lot, residential yard, etc.). Buffer widths are to be determined based on the guidance provided in **Section 5** and in consultation with the City. Notably, buffer width determinations are to be based on the NHS component for the replacement (restored) area.

6.3 Guiding Principles for Ecological Compensation

The following are objectives of replacement and ecological compensation:

- To restore, replace, and preferably, enhance the ecological structure and function of the affected NHS by achieving no net loss of ecological features or functions, and where possible, achieve a net environmental benefit (i.e., a net gain of ecological features and / or functions);
- To implement compensation within the same subwatershed, and preferably in as close proximity to the original feature as possible to ;
- To locate replacement and compensation works within or adjacent to the NHS so that system connectivity is maintained and, preferably, enhanced;
- To complete compensation projects promptly so that ecosystem functions are re-established as soon as possible after or even before losses occur;
- To ensure transparency and accountability throughout the process of planning, implementing, monitoring and evaluating the effectiveness of the replacement and / or compensation; and,
- To incorporate adaptive management and climate resiliency into compensation based on the scientific literature and the results of effectiveness monitoring.,

Furthermore, ecological replacement and compensation shall be informed by current knowledge of the City ecosystems, applicable watershed studies, relevant studies by related disciplines (e.g., hydrogeological, hydrological and / or geotechnical) and any applicable conservation authority and be carried out in a transparent and timely manner.

6.4 Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan

The Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan will be reviewed by City staff and in consultation with applicable agencies where required. The Plan is to be aligned with the principles outlined in **Section 6.3** and include, but may not be limited to, the following:

- Rationale for ecological compensation (i.e., explanation of why residual impacts are unavoidable) and feasibility of the compensation;
- Description of the feature type, ecological structure and function(s) of the natural heritage feature (or portion thereof) to be removed or disturbed, including the size of area proposed for removal;
- Specific ecological objectives for the replacement and compensation, with specific targets where appropriate;
- Rationale for the proposed compensation ratio ($\geq 1:1$ land-area basis) and the area of proposed compensation;
- Description of the proposed compensation location (refer to **Section 2.6.6.8** and **6.3**);
- Construction schedule (e.g., phasing) and completion timeline;
- Proposed native species for planting, with consideration for climate change resiliency;
- A Concept Plan, including the size and location of the replacement / compensation in relation to the NHS;
- Implementation plans and detailed design drawings, including any required grading plans (stamped by a Landscape Architect and / or Engineer), ESC plans to ensure protection of other NHS components, and planting plans;
- Plantings should specify native species appropriate for the site and feature type, with consideration for climate change resiliency (e.g., inclusion of a small proportion of species native to southern Ontario with ranges just south of London);
- Post-installation maintenance requirements, including provisions for supplemental invasive species removal and native plantings where appropriate, particularly for woodland features;
- A monitoring plan specific to the replacement / compensation that evaluates the extent to which the established objectives and targets are being met (refer to **Section 7.2.5.2**); and,
- Potential additional measures (e.g., adaptive management) to be undertaken by the proponent if the replacement / compensation objectives and targets are not being met.

6.5 Determining Appropriate Measures

The ability to successfully re-establish ecological structure and function is, in part, dependent on the type of natural heritage features and the specific type of vegetation community being restored. Some vegetation community types can be readily restored in a relatively short period of time (e.g., meadows), while others take longer (e.g., young woodlands) and still others are very difficult or impossible to replicate with the current knowledge and techniques (e.g., treed swamps, bogs).

For example, the functions of some vegetation community such as cultural meadows and some marshes can be established relatively quickly (e.g., within five years) as they are dominated by perennial grasses and forbs which can reach maturity over the course of a single season and with the right soils and hydrology can support habitats for a range of species within a few years (Solymar, 2005; TRCA, 2018). The functions of other features such as woodlands take much longer to re-establish due to their

long developmental periods (McLachlan and Bazely, 2003; MNRF, 2017a). As such, there can be a substantial time-lag between the removal of an established wooded feature and the time required for the compensated area to fully replace the ecological function and services provided by original feature (e.g., 20 to 50 years).

Feature compensation considerations should consider but not be limited to:

- Topography and drainage of the existing and proposed feature;
- Community type (based on ELC);
- Wildlife habitat types and structures to be replicated or added as enhancements;
- Soil type, structure and quality of the existing and proposed feature composition and processes;
- Surface water contributions and hydroperiod; and,
- Groundwater processes and interaction.

6.5.1 Wetlands

Once the replacement and compensation is approved in principle by the City, for wetlands, the quantification of the physical area of the proposed loss is to be based on the feature delineation using ELC, OWES (as described in **Section 3**) and Critical Function Zones (CFZs) and confirmed with the City and appropriate Conservaton Authority.

6.5.2 Significant Woodlands and Woodlands

Once the replacement and compensation is approved in principle by the City, for Significant Woodlands, the quantification of the physical area of the proposed loss is to be based on the feature delineation using ELC, OWES (as described in **Section 3**) and confirmed with the City and appropriate Conservaton Authority.

For Woodlands, trees approved for removal through the planning process are to be replaced in accordance with the Forest City Policies in *the London Plan*.

6.5.3 Other Features

Where approved in principle by the City, other features within the City's jurisdiction may be considered for replacement compensation on a case by case basis at a minimum of 1:1 land-area basis, or greater as required through an approved EIS.

As with Wetlands and Significant Woodlands / Woodlands, a proposed replacement and compensation concept that is aligned with the policies, principles and guidelines above should be put forward to the City before work goes into developing detailed plans and designs.

Ultimately, an approved Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan, will guide the site preparation, construction / creation and post-construction maintenance and monitoring of the feature.

6.6 Implementating Replacement and Compensation

It is important to outline a clear implementation plan for each feature to be compensated for to maximize the likelihood of replacement or enhancement of ecological structure, function and services within the City of London's NHS.

6.6.1 Site Selection

In all cases, provision of on-site compensation is the preferred option as it will be in proximity to where the loss is proposed and avoids the logistical complexities of finding suitable lands elsewhere in the City, preferably within the same subwatershed. However, in some cases where the subject lands cannot accommodate part or all of the replacement or compensation, proponents may explore directing compensation on alternate suitable lands. The details of such an arrangement will need to be confirmed and formalized in consultation with the City, however some additional guidance is provided here.

Ecological Considerations

Appropriate site selection for ecological replacement and compensation will increase the likelihood of achieving no net loss or net environmental benefit, specifically when considering landscape-scale conservation goals and improving ecological system connectivity (Koh *et al.*, 2014).

Potential naturalization sites have been identified by the City of London (as outlined in ***The London Plan***) which are generally good candidates for restoration, enhancement, and expansion of the NHS. Some potential naturalization sites are found on Map 5 – Natural Heritage in ***The London Plan***, however not all potential sites are mapped and thus, consultation with the City of London is recommended if other potential areas are identified. Further, not all sites are created equal and consultation with experts (e.g., Ecologists, Hydrogeologists, Engineers, etc.) is typically required to help identify appropriate locations for ecological compensation. Habitat creation and restoration is generally most successful when a project understands and works with the prevailing biophysical conditions on site (e.g., climate / exposure, topography, drainage / hydrology, soils).

The following should be considered in determining the site for ecological replacement and compensation within the City of London:

- Proposed sites must be able to support the size of the compensation, the associated buffer(s), as well as the function and services provided by the feature;
- Proposed sites for compensation of a feature should ideally be outside of the current NHS to ensure no net loss, and preferably net environmental benefit. Securing or purchasing land for compensation that is already identified as part of the NHS would result in a Net Loss to the overall area of the system.
- Compensation should be planned adjacent, or in close proximity, to the NHS to maximize connectivity and linkages. The guidelines outlined in **Section 3** and **4** can help inform site selection (e.g., bay areas, connectivity, ecological function) for compensation.
- The size, shape and structure of the proposed compensation should contribute to the City of London's goals for the NHS. In general, features that are circular or squarish will be preferred over long narrow extensions.
- Newly restored ecosystems must be buffered and should also be situated to help ensure they are protected from the effects of adjacent land uses.

Planning and Management Considerations

Compensation should generally be directed to lands that are already or will be transferred to a public or non-profit agency, or established as a conservation easement to ensure the long-term protection of ecological function and services being compensated.

If proposed sites for replacement, compensation or enhancement are not available within the Urban Growth Boundary, the City of London and any other applicable agencies may in exceptional cases, identify lands that are within the NHS but are in need of restoration or enhancement. However, this shall be the exception to the rule, given that this could result in a Net Loss in the amount of land within the

NHS. To ensure no net loss and long term protection of the NHS, lands secured for replacement and compensation should be appropriately zoned and mapped for the NHS component.

6.6.2 Replicating Ecosystem Structure and Functions

Ecosystems are complex and dynamic systems. Regardless of the approach to determining the level of compensation required, attempts to replace lost ecosystem structure and functions will fall short in many instances, at least in the short term. Understanding this limitation, the Guideline establishes an approach that attempts to replicate, to the extent possible and without significant delay or time-lag, the same ecosystem structure, and associated level of ecosystem functions that are to be lost.

To ensure that ecosystem structure and function is replaced, or preferably improved, consultation on the compensation plan and design must be undertaken with the City of London and any other applicable agencies. For robust examples of compensation project design and estimated costs, refer to **Guideline for Determining Ecosystem Compensation, Appendix A** (TRCA, 2018). Construction activities related to the implementation of compensation projects should refer to **Section B – Part 5 – Tree Planting and Protection Guidelines (TPP)** and **Part 6 – Parks and Open Spaces** in the City of London's **Standard Contract Documents for Municipal Construction** (City of London, 2020).

6.6.3 Plant Selection

Plant selection is critical in attempting to compensate for a loss of natural features. Thus, the rationale for plant selection, with consideration for the feature being replaced and the associated ecological functions and services, must be included in the Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan.

Plant selection will require a case-by-case assessment and consultation with the City of London and other applicable agencies. Native species diversification must be considered with respect to climate change resilience, known and emerging pest impacts and overall longevity of ecological function.

CanPlant (Dougan and Associates, 2020) is a recommended resource that can be referenced to ensure plants selected meet the environmental conditions of the proposed site. Species selection considerations may include, but are not limited to: vegetation type (e.g., woody, herbaceous), species native to the Mixedwood Plains ecozone (preferably Ecoregion 7E), light and moisture requirements, soil requirements, tolerances (e.g., pH, drought, etc.), and natural habitat type.

6.7 Cash-in-Lieu

In exceptional cases, when a feature approved for removal cannot be compensated for on-site and another parcel of land cannot be identified and secured off-site, at the City's discretion, proponents may provide funds to the City in lieu of undertaking the compensation project themselves. The amount of cash-in-lieu will be based on the cost to restore the impacted ecosystem's structure and the cost of replacing its land base.

6.8 Tracking Compensation

Ecological replacement and compensation monitoring is needed to determine whether compensation has achieved no net loss (of area and ecological functions) or net environmental benefit (i.e., enhancements as compared to original conditions) of the replicated feature and ecological function(s). For example, if a wetland has a core function of providing amphibian breeding habitat for at least two species, monitoring should assess amphibian breeding in the replicated / compensated feature to ensure no net loss (i.e., at least two species of amphibians still breeding), or net environmental benefit (more than two species of amphibians still breeding).

Further guidance related to monitoring requirements are outlined in **Section 7.2**. The results of monitoring must be provided to the City of London as outlined in **Section 7.2**, to allow for the implementation of adaptive management, and for any necessary adjustments to compensation strategies moving forward.

DRAFT

7. Environmental Monitoring

7.1 Policy and Context

A monitoring plan is one of the requirements of an Environmental Management Plan for any EIS developed for the City of London (as outlined in **The London Plan Policy 1436_4**) as part of the approval process for development or infrastructure projects adjacent to any components of the Natural Heritage System. The monitoring plan and subsequent implementation, is critical to tracking any loss of natural heritage features or their associated functions over time (MNRF, 2010b), and to providing a basis for adaptive management or mitigative measures in the area being monitored and / or informing forthcoming developments.

Consideration for monitoring early-on in the planning process is highly recommended to ensure appropriate resources are allocated for the completion and implementation of an approved monitoring plan. In some cases it may be appropriate to establish locations and use methods for existing conditions data collection that can be replicated and also serve as baseline data for monitoring, and potentially for during and post-construction monitoring as well.

Monitoring plans must be approved by the City of London prior to the start of construction and are determined on a case-by-case basis considering the potential impacts of development and infrastructure, as well as the natural heritage features and functions identified (and evaluated) within or adjacent to the proposed development or infrastructure site. The detailed pre-construction and construction monitoring plan is to be included in the approved Environmental Monitoring Plan (EMP) (as described in **Section 2.6.6.9**) developed from the Environmental Recommendations of an EIS.

Monitoring will enable planning authorities, through development and infrastructure agreements, to require subsequent changes to site conditions if the environmental effects are found to exceed predicted effects or targets, or if there are identifiable negative effects. Monitoring the environmental effects of development and infrastructure also provides well-documented, local examples of best management practices for particular types of development or infrastructure projects and particular types of features or functions. Monitoring may encompass a number of different measures as determined through the EIS process based on the potential impacts and mitigation measures that have been approved.

Common conditions and / or mitigation measures that may require monitoring include, but are not limited to:

- hydrogeological and hydrological processes (e.g., maintenance of pre-development groundwater levels and flows to watercourses, maintenance of water balance in wetlands)
- erosion and sediment control measures (e.g., spills and sediment releases)
- tree protection measures (e.g., machinery in identified tree protection zones)
- natural heritage feature encroachments (e.g., no grading or dumping within protected features)
- ecological functions of natural heritage features (e.g., continued presence of amphibian species and / or forest bird species documented pre-development)
- successful naturalization of buffers and
- plant survivorship from feature-based restoration and/or compensation.

Monitoring should be tailored to the local conditions and anticipated impacts, focused on measures that can be documented consistently and include indicators or triggers for adaptive management where appropriate, and indicate if the proponent, the City or another agency will be responsible for undertaking the adaptive management if required. Measures and responsibilities will ultimately be determined in consultation with the City and any other responsible agencies.

The definition of clear goals and objectives, as well as robust information on the proposed mitigation measures and potential impacts, are critical in determining which aspects of the natural heritage features (and functions) require monitoring. This will aid in ensuring that the monitoring program will not only be effective, but efficient and streamlined (e.g., targeted monitoring).

7.2 Environmental Management Plan (EMP) Requirements

As discussed in **Section 2.6.6.9** the primary deliverable of the EIS is the Environmental Management Recommendations section. The environmental management recommendations may form an Environmental Management Plan (EMP).

The typical components of an EMP include:

Natural Heritage Protection Areas – The NHS components present within and adjacent to the subject lands in which development is generally not permitted. This may include regulated features and hazard lands. These areas should be delineated on an EMP Figure(s) to be included in this section of the EIS. Recommendations regarding Natural Heritage Protection Areas must require that these areas are delineated on Site Plans and contract drawings with notes that identify the areas as “no development, and no entry” areas.

Ecological Buffers – Ecological buffers must be clearly delineated on the EMP Figure(s). Recommendations regarding ecological buffers must require that these areas are delineated on Site Plans and contract drawings with notes that identify the areas as “no development, and no entry” areas. Pathways identified in consultation with and approved by the City will be clearly delineated. Additionally, any management recommendations and planting recommendations for ecological buffers should be detailed such that the recommendations can be added to landscape drawings with clear specifications for seed mixtures, shrub and tree plantings and other measures.

Restoration, Enhancement and Compensation Measures / Areas – Areas that have been identified for restoration, enhancement or compensation should also be identified on the EMP Figure(s). Similar to the ecological buffers, management recommendations and planting recommendations for restoration, enhancement and compensation areas should be detailed such that the recommendations can be added to landscape drawings with clear specifications for seed mixtures, shrub and tree plantings and other measures.

Construction Monitoring and Inspection Plan – The requirements for mitigation measures during construction must be detailed in a Construction Monitoring and Inspection Plan. This plan must provide standard construction mitigation measures and mitigation measures specific to the project and subject lands. Components that may be included in a Construction Mitigation and Monitoring Plan include:

- *Delineation and specifications for protection fencing* – protection fencing to be delineated along Natural Heritage Protection Areas, ecological buffers or for isolated/individual trees or features should be identified on the EMP, Site Plans and contract drawings.
- *Delineation and specifications for ESC fencing* - ESC fencing to be delineated along Natural Heritage Protection Areas, ecological buffers or for isolated/individuals trees or features must be identified on the EMP, Site Plans and contract drawings.
- *Delineation and specifications for wildlife exclusionary fencing* – Wildlife exclusionary fencing designed to prevent wildlife from entering the construction areas of a site should be identified on the EMP, Site Plans and contract drawings. * *Note that this and the above noted fencing types may be considered the same if the specifications for each are met.*
- *Species at Risk and Wildlife Handling Protocols* – During construction, SAR and other wildlife may enter the site putting them at risk of injury or mortality from construction equipment, vehicles or construction crews working on the site. The preparation of a Species at Risk and

Wildlife Handling Protocol document can prevent or mitigate injury or mortality. This protocol document should be prepared specific to the project and the species present within the study area and adjacent lands.

- *Dewatering and temporary stormwater management* – Dewatering and temporary stormwater management measures may be required for a construction site. Mitigation measures for these measures should be detailed and specified on contract drawings for the project and clearly detailed in the EMP.
- *Dust suppression measures* – Dust suppression measures may be required for the construction works on the site. If required, dust suppression measures should be detailed and included in the specifications on contract drawings.
- *Construction Monitoring* – The monitoring of the above mitigation measures should be an integral part of the plan during construction. The frequency and details of the construction monitoring should be tailored to the specific project requirements as identified in the EMP. The environmental monitoring program should be specific to the EMP and should not be considered replication or replacement for regular site inspections for other purposes.

7.2.1 Environmental Management Plan Report Requirements

- **Goals and objectives** of the mitigation being monitored are clearly outlined to provide a baseline;
- A **timeline** of the monitoring requirements for each of the development stages (e.g., pre-, during, and post-construction) should be clearly outlined;
- **Mitigation measures** should be clearly defined (and geo-referenced), including the inclusion of measurable **thresholds** (as approved on a case-by-case basis as approved by the City of London through the EIS process) that may trigger remedial action;
- **Data collection methods**, which should be **standardized** to ensure the long-term sustainability of the monitoring program, need to be clearly defined and applicable to the goals and objectives;
 - To assess baseline conditions, monitoring should employ sampling methods that accurately assess ecological conditions using a standardized approach that can be replicated as outlined in **Appendix C**.
- Clear **monitoring programs** that include the following three types of monitoring:
 - **Baseline** to outline the existing conditions of natural heritage features and functions in accordance with established and accepted data collection standards;
 - **Compliance** with approved EIS requirements, ESC monitoring and applicable legislation; and,
 - **Post Construction** monitoring of measures implemented to mitigate potential impacts from development.
- Processes or mechanisms for **data storage / transfer, quality assurance, and analysis of results** for initiating responses to threshold triggers;
- **Roles and Responsibilities**, along with the required qualifications, of those undertaking the monitoring program;
- An outline of the **reporting** structure required for the development or infrastructure as determined through an approved EIS;
 - All **monitoring data** must be shared with the City of London as a part of each **monitoring report**.

- **Contingency** measures or strategies should mitigation not be effective in achieving no net impacts as per the approved EIS; and,
- **Amendments** may be necessary as the detailed design, proposed mitigation, or construction activities change throughout the planning process (following the approval of an EIS).
- Monitoring should be undertaken intervals appropriate to the feature. Typical intervals include the 1, 3, and 5-year points after construction and or planting is complete, in order to allow for early detection and correction of any planting or construction failures.
- Monitoring and maintenance will typically be the responsibility of those undertaking the compensation project. This responsibility will be confirmed and documented as part of the agreements outlined in **Section 6.3**. Monitoring reports will be written to document project results. Where projects are not functioning as designed and approved, investigations will be undertaken to understand why and securities may be utilized to correct and / or complete restoration works. Further, modifications may be required to ensure that the project is successful; the need for these can be stipulated in an agreement and assured through securities held by the public agencies (see also **Section 6.3**). Monitoring and maintenance often constitutes a learning process that can inform future compensation decisions and implementation plans.

City of London staff, with input from local conservation authorities and any other relevant review agencies, will use the details contained in the approved EIS to guide the review of proposed compensation projects to facilitate appropriate and comprehensive ecological compensation. As per the usual plan review process, all comments from the TRT will be conveyed to the proponent by the City of London staff on the file.

7.2.2 Monitoring Timeline and Responsibilities

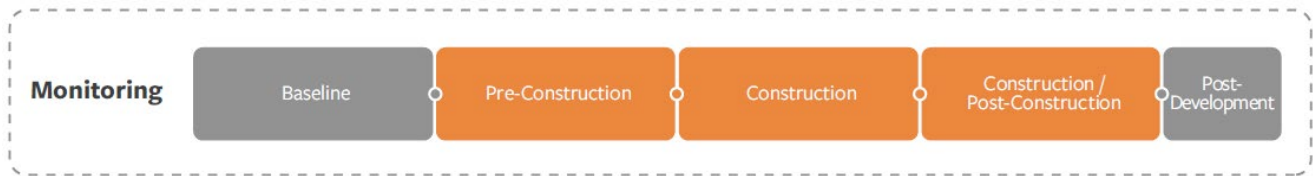
As development and infrastructure proposals, along with the subsequent implementation, can be highly dynamic, it is critical to define the roles and responsibilities of the monitoring component for the entirety of the project and into the post-development phase. It is the responsibility of the **proponent** to create a monitoring plan (to be approved through the EIS process) and to implement monitoring until the end of the Assumption Development Stage (i.e., when the developer has satisfied all parts of the development or infrastructure agreement and the assumption has been granted) or once the proponent has fulfilled the requirements outlined in the EIS.

For each project, the proponent is required to articulate timelines and responsibilities of monitoring, including that for pre-, during-, and post-construction, compensation, and up until assumption. If the feature is being transferred into City of London ownership post-assumption, long-term monitoring will be conducted by the City of London. However, if the feature is retained as private ownership, long-term monitoring will be the responsibility of the proponent.

In general, the monitoring plan should be developed with consideration for the following general phases, depicted in **Figure 7.1**, which are described in subsequent sections of these guidelines:

- **Pre-construction** – to be completed prior to the initiation of construction activities;
- **Construction** – to be conducted from initiation of construction activities until a specified build-out stage as determined in consultation with the City of London;
- **Post-construction** – to be conducted following construction monitoring until the end of the Assumption Development Stage;**Post-development** – to be completed as determined in consultation with the City of London; and,
 - **Compensation** – to be initiated upon completion of compensation project and continued until requirements have been met within the Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan (as described separately in **Section 6.4**).

Figure 7.1: Environmental Monitoring Process Stages



The City of London will require EIS monitoring reports throughout the process. The reporting timeline and structure will be otherwise determined through the approval of an EIS.

7.2.3 Pre-Construction Monitoring

Pre-construction monitoring will be approved as part of the EIS process for development and infrastructure projects. These monitoring programs and activities should align with the recommendations provided in the EIS (see **Section 2.6.6.9**) and be used to inform the EMP. Some examples of variables to be monitored pre-construction (and thus through the entirety of the project or until monitoring is handed over to the City post-development) may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Surface and groundwater quantity, quality, and shifts in hydrologic dynamics (e.g., water balance, drainage patterns) that may be influenced by development or infrastructure activities, including grading; and,
- Encroachments to protected NHS components, buffer implementation and establishment, and effectiveness of other NHS protection measures such as fencing.

7.2.4 Construction Monitoring

Upon initiation of construction activities, construction monitoring should be initiated to assess changes to site conditions, as well as the implementation of mitigation measures (as outlined in the approved EMP). In general, the bulk of the monitoring during this phase will be focused on *compliance*. Compliance monitoring is implemented to ensure that the approved conditions of the EIS, along with those outlined in applicable legislation, are met during the construction phase. This step is critical to ensure that the natural heritage features, and their associated function(s), are protected and that impacts are mitigated as outlined in the approved EIS. Some examples of compliance monitoring include the inspection of, but are not limited to, the following mitigation measures:

- ESC;
- Tree protection;
- Boundary delineation and setbacks;
- Buffer implementation;
- Area searches for wildlife;
- Protection of water quality and quantity;
- Maintenance of hydrogeological regimes, assessed in partnership with the applicable Conservation Authority; and,
- Respect for timing windows for approved works (e.g., related to bat overwintering, breeding birds and / or fish habitat restrictions).

Should the proposed development or infrastructure project be non-compliant with the approved EIS, immediate action shall be taken to ensure the correct implementation of mitigation measures in

accordance with the EMP (refer to **Section 7.2.1**). Activities that may result in negative impacts to the NHS shall be halted as soon as the issue is identified.

7.2.5 Post-Construction Monitoring

As outlined in **Section 2.6.6.9**, the development of a post-construction monitoring plan should be initiated well before construction starts. The baseline information/data with which the post-construction monitoring information/data will be compared should be collected (ideally) in the year or two years before the start of construction.

The post-construction monitoring program should include the monitoring of the recommendations of the EMP (i.e., ecological buffers, enhancement, restoration and compensation areas specifications) as well as the monitoring of potential impacts to the NHS. Monitoring of potential impacts should be simplified and repeatable to ensure replicability and program adherence.

In general, post-construction monitoring will take place at a build-out stage or after a percentage of the construction activities have been completed. The specific timeline for the transition from construction to post-construction monitoring will be determined as part of an approved EMP in consultation with the City of London. Typical intervals include 1-, 3- or 5-years. The City will take on monitoring post assumption in intervals appropriate to the feature. Reporting of monitoring data including those for compensation sites shall be provided annually by the proponent for the duration of their responsible term.

The main focus of this phase of monitoring is evaluate the performance and effectiveness of the mitigation implemented in the construction stage and to inform adaptive management and shifts in management and compensation strategies, if required.

Post-construction monitoring is critical to understanding if the mitigation and/or compensation measures are effective and/or if potential impacts are greater or lesser in magnitude than predicted during the impact assessment. Post-construction monitoring will also inform the need for adaptive management or amendments to the future monitoring plans based on the level of success of the mitigation measures.

Performance and effectiveness monitoring may be required based on mitigation measures for, but not limited to, the following:

- hydrogeological and hydrological processes (e.g., maintenance of pre-development groundwater levels and flows to watercourses, maintenance of water balance in wetlands)
- stormwater management measures (e.g., outlet water quality and erosion thresholds not exceeded)
- tree protection measures (e.g., protected trees remain in good health)
- natural heritage feature encroachments (e.g., no dumping or informal trail creation within protected features)
- ecological functions of natural heritage features (e.g., continued presence of amphibian species and / or forest bird species documented pre-development)
- successful naturalization of buffers, and
- successful establishment and diversification of feature-based restoration and/or compensation.

Post-construction monitoring requires the submittal of annual reports to the City of London outlining seasonal changes in the existing conditions of the NHS, as well as to show changes year-over-year. Any major issues identified during the monitoring periods (e.g., substantive die off of plantings) must be brought to the immediate attention of the City of London and the proponent. In general, the report may include, but is not limited to, the following:

- General methodology and description (e.g., vegetation communities, taxa specific) of monitoring;
- Outline of thresholds and the associated contingencies in place should they be exceeded;
- All data collected (i.e., baseline, during construction, and up-to-date post construction);

- Analysis and comparison of data; and,
- A plan for the maintenance, and if necessary, implementation of additional mitigation measures.

Post-construction monitoring should take place until end of the Assumption Development Stage and will shift to the Post-development monitoring, as described in **Section 7.2.5.1**.

7.2.5.1 *Post-Development Monitoring*

Post-development monitoring is aimed at continuing to assess ecosystem resilience, to detect changes in the structure of natural heritage features, and to assess the long term efficacy of EIS recommendations (i.e., mitigation measures). The requirement for post-development monitoring, along with an outline of the roles and responsibilities, will be determined as part of an approved EMP (as outlined in **Section 2.6.6.9**) in consultation with the City of London. The results of post-development monitoring will be analyzed based on timelines in the EIS. The results of post-development monitoring inform if additional remedial works are necessary or if policy changes are needed.

7.2.5.2 *Compensation Monitoring*

As outlined in **Section 6.3**, ecological compensation may be permitted where it is not possible to avoid, minimize, or mitigate potential negative impacts from development or infrastructure. The aim of compensation monitoring is to determine whether the ecological compensation has achieved no net loss, or preferably a net environmental benefit, in relation to the replaced or enhanced natural heritage features and their associated function(s). The proposed compensation monitoring plan must be approved prior to the implementation of compensation measures.

Compensation monitoring should be initiated upon completion of the compensation project (e.g., planting, restoration has been completed) to ensure that baseline data is captured. It is expected that monitoring will continue until the compensation goals have been achieved and the conditions approved through the EIS process (i.e., Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan) have been fulfilled (5-year timelines should be expected) **or** the lands have been transferred to the City of London and an agreement has been made to shift monitoring responsibilities. This close-out process for compensation monitoring must be approved in consultation with the City of London.

Although compensation monitoring plan details will vary on a case-by-case basis, the following are some general recommendations:

- Compensation monitoring should capture the baseline conditions and re-evaluate the efficacy of the compensation project at the 1, 3, and 5-year milestones. Should the compensation project not meet the goal of no net loss or net environmental benefit at the 5-year milestone, compensation monitoring will be required at 5-year intervals until no net loss at minimum is achieved. This timeline may span pre-, during, and post-construction as it is recommended that compensation projects be initiated as early as possible to minimize lag time of replacing natural features and their function(s);
- Survivorship thresholds expectations should be set, with a 70% success rate being recommended as a baseline (NVCA, 2019);
- Monitoring data should be transferred to the City of London for storage and to inform future compensation strategies (e.g., lessons learned);
- Reporting should occur at each milestone to outline the succession and survivorship within the replaced or enhanced feature to assess the projects trajectory towards no net loss or net environmental benefit. Where projects are not functioning as designed and approved (e.g. expected outcomes not observed, low survivorship of plantings), as defined through the Ecological Replacement and Compensation Plan, and with consideration for the most up-to-date

research, interventions and modifications to the project will be required to ensure that the project achieves, at minimum, no net loss; and,

- Contingency measures should be outlined for varying potential impacts, as well as based on survivorship.

The City of London will provide direction on the success of the implementation of the EIS recommendations resulting in one of three outcomes; 1) do nothing, 2) remedial works identified, or, 3) policy changes identified.

DRAFT

8. Glossary of Terms

Adaptive management - A planned and systematic process for continuously improving environmental management practices by learning about their outcomes. Adaptive management provides flexibility to identify and implement new mitigation measures or to modify existing ones during the life of a project (Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency, 2016).

Adjacent lands – Those lands within a set or specified distance of an individual component of the natural heritage system. Adjacent lands are defined as lands contiguous to a specific natural heritage feature or area where it is likely that development or site alteration would have a negative impact on the feature or area. The extent of the adjacent lands will be in conformity with the distances identified in Table 13 of *The London Plan* or as recommended by the Province (City of London, 2019).

Area-sensitive species - Those that require a forest to be a given size (generally a relatively extensive habitat patch) to successfully reproduce or occur in higher densities (Sandilands, 1997)

Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest (ANSI) - *Areas of land and water containing natural landscapes or features that have been identified as having life science or earth science values related to protection, scientific study or education* (MMAH, 2020).

Assumption Development Stage - The developer has satisfied all parts of the development or infrastructure agreement and the assumption has been granted.

Basal Area – The basal area of a stand of trees is the sum of the cross-sectional surface areas of each live tree, measured at DBH, and reported on a per unit area basis. Basal area is a measure of tree density, and widely used in forestry, wildlife, and other natural resource management professions (Bettinger *et al.*, 2016).

Baseline Conditions – Baseline conditions may also be referred to as the environmental setting, existing conditions, and other similar terms. The baseline conditions are the physical, chemical, biological, social, economic, and cultural setting in which the proposed project is to be located, and where local impacts (both positive and negative) might be expected to occur. These conditions are the standard against which are compared projected future conditions from project alternatives. Their description and characterization are necessary for decision-makers, reviewers, and others who are unfamiliar with the project site and surrounding landscape (Shepard, 2006).

Biodiversity - The variability among organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which they are part; this includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (MNRF, 2010b).

Buffers - *An area or band of permanent vegetation, preferably consisting of native species, located adjacent to a natural heritage feature and usually bordering lands that are subject to development or site alteration. The purpose of the buffer is to protect the feature and its functions by mitigating impacts of the proposed land use and allowing an area for edge phenomena to continue (e.g., allowing space for edge trees and limbs to fall without damaging personal property, area for roots of edge trees to persist, area for cats to hunt without intruding into the feature). The buffer may also provide area for recreational trails and provides a physical separation from new development that will discourage encroachment* (MNRF, 2010b).

Carolinian Zone -

States than with the “warm continental (mixed deciduous-coniferous forests)” division farther north. It has been described as Canada’s most endangered major ecosystem, and many of its flora and fauna are found nowhere else in the nation. This is largely because many southern species are at their northern limits here, and because most of their natural habitat has been lost to human uses over the past three centuries.” (Jalava *et al.*, 2000).

Coefficient of Conservatism (for Southern Ontario) – *A numeric value between 0 (widespread) and 10 (found only in specialized habitats) assigned to each plant species indicating the degree of faithfulness a plant displays to a specific habitat or set of environmental conditions. “Conservative” plant species, such as those that are found only in relatively pristine natural habitats like bogs or prairies, are assigned a high coefficient of conservatism; other plant species that grow in a wide variety of habitats and can tolerate high levels of cultural disturbance are assigned low values. By compiling a plant species list for a natural area and looking up the coefficients of conservatism for each species listed, one can calculate a Floristic Quality Index, which can be used to compare the quality of natural areas. The NHIC has produced a list of native plants occurring in southern Ontario, and has assigned tentative coefficients of conservatism to each* (MNRF, 2010b).

Complexity, as it relates to habitats, is the number of species in the ecosystem and their relative abundances. Ecological communities and ecosystems are good examples of complex systems. They comprise large numbers of interacting entities, on many scales of observation, and their dynamics are often non-linear (causes are not proportional to consequences) – this leads to unpredictability and even apparent randomness.

Compliance Monitoring – Entails monitoring of the NHS components as needed to ensure that the approved recommendations in the EIS, along with any other applicable conditions, are met during the construction phase.

Conservation Status Ranks – *Standard methods to evaluate species and plant communities and assign conservation status ranks* (MNRF, 2020).

Global Rank (GRank) - *Conservation status of a species or plant community across its entire range* (MNRF, 2020).

National Rank (NRank) - *Conservation status of a species or plant community within a particular country* (MNRF, 2020).

Subnational Rank (SRank) – *Conservation status of a species or plant community within a particular province, territory or state* (MNRF, 2020).

Critical Function Zones – *The term Critical Function Zone (CFZ) describes non-wetland areas within which biophysical functions or attributes directly related to the wetland occur. This could, for example, be adjacent upland grassland nesting habitat for waterfowl (that use the wetland to raise their broods). The CFZ could also encompass upland nesting habitat for turtles that otherwise occupy the wetland, foraging areas for frogs and dragonflies, or nesting habitat for birds that straddle the wetland-upland ecozone (e.g., Yellow Warbler). Effectively, the CFZ is a functional extension of the wetland into the upland. It is not a buffer for the wetland* (Environment Canada, 2013).

Cultural communities – Vegetation communities originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic influences and / or culturally based disturbances (such as agricultural fields (croplands) and pastures (grazing), mowing, woodlot management or tree cutting, etc.) often containing a large proportion of introduced species (adapted from Lee *et al.* 1998), but undergoing natural succession. Cultural communities include, but are not limited to, cultural meadows, cultural thickets, cultural savannahs, cultural woodland, and cultural plantation ecosites (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Cultural savannahs and cultural woodlands - Areas where trees have been planted, or have resulted from first generation regeneration of a site originating or maintained by anthropogenic disturbances (Lee

et al., 1998). It does not include treed areas where the main stratum is dominated by native species and tree cover is >60%. Cultural savannahs are treed areas with 11-35% scattered or clumped tree cover and dominated by graminoids and forbs. Cultural woodlands have 36-60% scattered or clumped tree cover.

Cumulative effects – *The sum of all individual effects occurring over space and time, including those that will occur in the foreseeable future (MNRF, 2010b).*

Development – *the creation of a new lot, change in land use, or the construction of buildings and structures requiring approval under the Planning Act, but does not include:*

- a) *activities that create or maintain infrastructure authorized under an environmental assessment process;*
- b) *works subject to the Drainage Act (MMAH, 2020).*

Disturbance - Any action that will cause an **effect** or **stress**; can be natural (e.g. fire, flood) or human – generated (e.g. various forms of development activity or agricultural uses).

Drip Line - *As the location on the ground beneath the theoretical line of the outer most branches of the trees at the edge of a woodland (City of London, 2018). Where an asymmetric tree canopy occurs, the drip line shall be the greatest of the drip line distances measured horizontally from the base of the trunk (City of London, 2016b).*

Ecological boundary – Is determined based on ecological principles, refined through the application of **Section 4** Boundary Delineation in these Environmental Management Guidelines, and are irrespective of property lines.

Ecological Compensation – Ecological compensation is an example of a trade-off whereby loss of natural values is remedied or offset by a corresponding compensatory action on the same site or elsewhere (Brown *et al.*, 2013). Ecological compensation is a positive conservation action that is required to counter-balance ecological values lost in the context of development or resource use and is an intentional form of trade-off (Morrison-Saunders and Pope, 2013).

Ecological function - *The natural processes, products, or services that living and non-living environments provide or perform within or between species, ecosystems and landscapes. These may include biological, physical and socio-economic interactions (MMAH, 2020).*

Ecological integrity – *The condition of an ecosystem in which (a) the structure, composition and function are unimpaired by stresses from human activity, (b) natural ecological processes are intact and self-sustaining and (c) ecosystem evolution is occurring naturally. Ecological integrity includes hydrological integrity (MNRF, 2010b).*

1. The ability of a system to resist disturbance (resistance).
2. The ability of a system to recover or return to a balanced state when subject to some degree of perturbations and disturbance (resilience).
3. The ability to persist in the long-term with the minimum level of human maintenance.
4. The ability to maintain a structure of native flora and fauna.

Edge Effects – The distance from the periphery (of a given natural heritage feature) to the point where conditions (as indicated by specific criteria) do not differ from those in the interior habitat (adapted from Environmental Law Institute, 2003). *Edge effects are known to edge effects vary depending on natural feature type, position in the landscape and other factors... With respect to biological effects, 100 metres is probably a conservative estimate of the extent of edge effects.* (MNRF 2010b).

Edge microclimate - Sun and wind are the overriding controls of the edge microclimate. They determine which plants survive and thrive as well as having a major impact on soil, insects and other animals.

- Effects from south-facing edges tend to extend further into the feature than from north-

facing edges.

- Effects from windward edges tend to extend further into the feature than from leeward edges.

ELC Community Series - Is the lowest level of classification using ELC that can be identified through maps, air-photo interpretation and other remote sensing techniques. Community series are distinguished on the type of vegetation cover (open, shrub, or treed) and/or the plant form that characterizes the community (i.e., deciduous, coniferous, mixed; Lee *et al.*, 1998).

ELC Ecosite – Part of an Ecosection having a relatively uniform parent material, soil, and hydrology, and a chronosequence of vegetation. It is a mappable, landscape unit integrating a consistent set of environmental factors and vegetation characteristics (e.g., Dry-Forest Deciduous Forest Ecosite) (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

ELC Vegetation Type - Is the finest level of resolution in the ELC, identified through site and stand level research and inventory. Vegetation types are generated by grouping similar plant communities based on plant species composition and dominance, according to relative cover. The goal is to distill the natural diversity and variability of plant communities to a small number of relatively uniform vegetation units (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Encroachment – Encroachment(s) into protected natural heritage features and areas can occur from other land uses in the adjacent lands. Common examples of encroachment include dumping garden refuse in the natural area, creating unauthorized access (e.g., an informal trail), extending lawn management and manicuring into the natural area, and building structures (such as forts or bike jumps). Encroachment is usually more pronounced where the limit between the protected natural area and the adjacent land use is not fenced.

Enhancement – From an ecological perspective, whereby the quality of ecosystem functions are improved. Enhancement can occur within or adjacent to a feature, and is a term that can apply to a natural heritage feature or to a natural heritage system as a whole. An example of ecological enhancement within a feature is removal of invasive plant species and related replacement with suitable native species. An example of an enhancement to a natural heritage system is the naturalization of a maintained lawn between two features to provide a more natural corridor or ecological linkage.

Feature Boundary – The delineated limit of one of the natural heritage features and areas that has been or may be included as a component of the City's Natural Heritage System as per ***The London Plan*** Policies 1319 and 1320. Feature boundaries are to be determined in accordance with the applicable policies from the ***The London Plan*** and in these EMGs, **Section 4**. If not already completed, all features shall be assessed for significance accordance with the applicable policies from the ***The London Plan*** and in these EMGs, **Section 3**.

Fish Habitat – *As defined in the Fisheries Act, means spawning grounds and any other areas, including nursery, rearing, food supply, and migration areas on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes* (MMAH, 2020).

Forest - *A terrestrial vegetation community with at least 60% tree cover* (Lee *et al.*, 1998) of coniferous and / or deciduous trees.

Forest interior species - Are those that nest only within the interior of forests and rarely occur near the edge (Freemark and Collins, 1992).

Fragmentation – [T]he degree to which natural habitat, once continuous, is divided into remnant isolated patches (Ontario Road Ecology Group, 2010).

Ground water feature – *Means water-related features in the earth's subsurface, including recharge/discharge areas, water tables, aquifers and unsaturated zones that can be defined by surface and subsurface hydrogeologic investigations* (MMAH, 2020).

Discharge Areas – Discharge areas are usually located in valleys and lowlands. There the hydraulic gradients are directed upward toward the land surface. Discharging groundwater re-enters the surface-water regime as inflow to lakes or baseflow to streams, or to become evapotranspiration from wetlands (Council of Canadian Academies, 2009).

Recharge Areas – Recharge usually occurs in topographically higher areas of a groundwater basin. Water-table elevations tend to be a subdued reflection of surface topography, and the differences in watertable elevation provide the driving force that moves groundwater by gravitational flow from recharge areas toward discharge areas at lower elevations. In recharge areas, the hydraulic gradient at the water table is directed downward, and recharging waters enter the groundwater-flow system to begin their slow journey through the groundwater basin (Council of Canadian Academies, 2009).

Hibernacula – (singular = hibernaculum) Underground chamber whereby snakes are able to safely overwinter. Hibernaculum can be a built structure or naturally occurring, i.e., animal burrow or fissure in the bedrock (Long Point Basin Land Trust, 2020).

High-Water Mark - The average **highest** level that a watercourse or waterbody rises to and remains at long enough to alter the riparian vegetation (DFO, 2007; DFO, 2019).

Indicator Species – Species used which offer an indication of the biological condition in an ecosystem (MNRF 2011b).

Invasive species - an organism that is not native to the place where found and tends to grow and spread aggressively, usually to the detriment of native species and ecosystems.

Interior Habitat - With respect to woodlands, interior habitat is usually determined as habitat 100 metres or more from the outer edge of the woodland. These interior habitats provide productive habitat for sensitive species that are sheltered from external influences and disturbance (MNRF, 2010b).

Landform - Is a topographic feature. The various slopes of the land surface resulting from a variety of actions such as deposition or sedimentation, erosion and movements of the earth crust.

Linkage - *Linear area intended to provide connectivity (at the regional or site level), supporting a complete range of community and ecosystem processes, enabling plants and animals to move between core areas and other larger areas of habitat over a period of generations. The terms are used interchangeably for planning purposes but may need to be distinguished for ecological or biological reasons* (MNRF, 2010b). Linkages can be naturally existing or restored linear landscape connections between two or more component of the NHS. In the City of London, from an ecological perspective, linkage functions can be supported by many components of the NHS. Also see the definition for Upland Corridors.

The functions provided by ecological linkages are informed by characteristics such as their width (i.e., appropriate to the scale of the phenomenon being addressed), length (e.g., a long corridor will generally need to be wider than a short one), quality (e.g., vegetative structure and composition), species diversity (e.g., low non-native plant indices), type of corridor use (e.g., species in which individuals pass directly between two areas in discrete events of brief duration; or species that need several days to several generations to pass through), importance within the landscape (e.g., the last remaining natural connection between two features), as well as the functions being expected of the linkage. Corridor functions may include, but are not limited to avenues along which:

- wide-ranging animals can travel, migrate and meet mates;
- plants can propagate;
- genetic interchange can occur among native flora and fauna;
- populations can move in response to environmental changes and natural disasters;
- individuals can recolonize habitats from which populations have been locally extirpated (MNRF

2010b, Environment Canada, 2013).

Low Impact Development (LID) – Approach to land development that mimics the natural movement of water in order to manage stormwater (rainwater and urban runoff) close to where the rain falls. LID uses small, simple design techniques and landscape features that filter, infiltrate, store, evaporate, and detain rainwater and runoffs at the lot level. (City of Hamilton, 2020).

Mean Coefficient of Conservatism (MCC) - Is calculated from the conservatism coefficients of all native species in a patch. MCC aids in measuring the overall quality of a site. The conservative coefficient describes the probability of finding a species in a particular habitat type or undisturbed habitat. Coefficients range from 0 (widespread) to 10 (found only in specialized habitats). See definition for Coefficient of Conservatism above.

Mitigation – *The prevention, modification, or alleviation of impacts or actions on the natural environment and -.... the prevention of negative impacts. Mitigation also includes any action intended to enhance beneficial effects* (MNRF 2010b)..

Native species – For the City of London, usually refers to species that occurred naturally in southwestern Ontario prior to European settlement. Where the status of a species is in question, the City will defer to the Natural Heritage Information Centre.

Natural Heritage Features and Areas - In the City of London, these are those features and areas identified in accordance with the Provincial Policy Statement and listed in **The London Plan** policies 1319 and 1320..

Natural Heritage System - *A system made up of natural heritage features and areas, and linkages intended to provide connectivity (at the regional or site level) and support natural processes which are necessary to maintain biological and geological diversity, natural functions, viable populations of indigenous species, and ecosystems. These systems can include natural heritage features and areas, federal and provincial parks and conservation reserves, other natural heritage features, lands that have been restored or have the potential to be restored to a natural state, areas that support hydrologic functions, and working landscapes that enable ecological functions to continue. The Province has a recommended approach for identifying natural heritage systems, but municipal approaches that achieve or exceed the same objective may also be use* (MMAH, 2020).

Natural landform-vegetation communities - Areas of vegetation associated with landform types (e.g., ravine, floodplain, tableland). The communities should represent typical pre-settlement vegetation conditions. For example: Yellow Birch deciduous swamp type on floodplain; or fresh Hemlock coniferous forest type on steep slope/ravine.

Negative Impacts – is defined in accordance with the Provincial Policy Statement and includes policy references from that document, as follows: a) *in regard to policy 1.6.6.4 and 1.6.6.5, potential risks to human health and safety and degradation to the quality and quantity of water, sensitive surface water features and sensitive ground water features, and their related hydrologic functions, due to single, multiple or successive development. Negative impacts should be assessed through environmental studies including hydrogeological or water quality impact assessments, in accordance with provincial standards;* b) *in regard to policy 2.2, degradation to the quality and quantity of water, sensitive surface water features and sensitive ground water features, and their related hydrologic functions, due to single, multiple or successive development or site alteration activities;* c) *in regard to fish habitat, any permanent alteration to, or destruction of fish habitat, except where, in conjunction with the appropriate authorities, it has been authorized under the Fisheries Act;* and d) *in regard to other natural heritage features and areas, degradation that threatens the health and integrity of the natural features or ecological functions for which an area is identified due to single, multiple or successive development or site alteration activities* (MMAH 2020).

Net effects - Those impacts that remain after mitigation has been implemented.

Non-native species - Used to refer to a species that did not originate naturally in an area. Usually refers to species that have been introduced to southwestern Ontario since European settlement. Where the status of a species is in question, the City will defer to the Natural Heritage Information Centre.

Overall Benefit Permit – Issued under the *Endangered Species Act* in which “authorizes a person, company or organization to perform the activity, as long as an overall benefit to the species is realized” (MECP, 2020). The person, company or organization must undertake “actions that contribute to improving the circumstances to the species” (MECP, 2020).

Patch clusters – Are several patches that may be connected as one Area if certain criteria for connectivity and distance are met (EPPAC, 1996). As defined in these EMGs (Section 3.1), these are vegetation patches within 250 m of each other that are not separated by major roads, highways, or urban development.

Patches – Are area of naturalized vegetation generally larger than 0.5 ha. A patch may be bisected by a utility corridor or road if the right-of-way (ROW) is less than 40 m. Patches may include one or more vegetation communities within natural feature boundaries, see Section 4.0.

Place Type (The London Plan) - Traditionally, Planners have focused on land use when setting plans for geographic areas within a city – often referred to as a “land use designation”. **The London Plan** takes a different approach by planning for the type of place that is envisioned – what this Plan refers to as a “Place Type”. It seeks to plan highly-functional, connected, and desirable places. Most place types support a range of intensities and a mix of land uses (City of London, 2019).

Environmental Review - 779_ In some cases, lands may contain natural heritage features and areas that have not been adequately assessed to determine whether they are significant and worthy of protection as part of the City’s NHS. The Environmental Review Place Type will ensure that development which may negatively impact the value of these features does not occur until such time as the required environmental studies are completed. 780_ In addition to the components of the NHS which have been evaluated and shown as Green Space on Map 1 – Place Types in conformity with the policies of this Plan, additional lands are identified on Map 5 – Natural Heritage, that may contain significant natural features and areas and important ecological functions which should be protected until environmental studies have been completed, reviewed, and accepted by the City. These potential components of the NHS, shown within the Environmental Review Place Type on Map 1, will be protected from activities that would diminish their functions pending the completion, review and acceptance of a detailed environmental study (City of London, 2019).

Green Space - 757_ The Green Space Place Type is made up of a system of public parks and recreational areas, private open spaces, and our most cherished natural areas. It encompasses a linear corridor along the Thames River, which represents the natural heritage and recreational spine of our city. It also encompasses our hazard lands, including our valleylands and ravines, and the floodplains associated with our river system. 758_ The Green Space Place Type is comprised of public and private lands; flood plain lands; lands susceptible to erosion and unstable slopes; natural heritage features and areas recognized by City Council as having city-wide, regional, or provincial significance; lands that contribute to important ecological functions; and lands containing other natural physical features which are desirable for green space use or preservation in a natural state. The components of the NHS that are included in the Green Space Place Type on Map 1 – Place Types, are identified or delineated on Map 5 - Natural Heritage. Hazard lands and natural resource lands that are included in the Green Space Place Type on Map 1 are identified or delineated on Map 6 – Hazards and Natural Resources (City of London 2019).

Plantation - A coniferous or deciduous treed community in which the majority of trees have been planted (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Potential Naturalization Areas - Potential naturalization areas are defined as areas where the opportunity exists to enhance, restore, or where appropriate, expand the NHS. These areas may include lands suitable to create natural habitats such as wetland habitat, pollinator habitat, wildlife habitat, or to compensate for trees lost to development. (*The London Plan* Policy 1378). Potential naturalization areas are an important component of the Natural Heritage System. Potential naturalization areas can include lands adjacent to natural heritage features and areas, other natural features, lands that have been restored or have the potential to be restored to a natural state, areas that support hydrologic functions, and working landscapes that enable ecological functions to continue. Potential naturalization areas may enhance, restore or strengthen and expand the health and viability of a natural heritage feature or area (*The London Plan* Policy 1379).

Prairie - An area of native grassland controlled by a combination of moisture deficiency and fire. Usually containing a distinctive assemblage of species. May include tallgrass prairie, tallgrass savannah or tallgrass woodland upland communities (Lee et al., 1998).

Provincially Significant Wetland – Wetlands that have been “identified as provincially significant by the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry using evaluation procedures established by the Province, as amended from time to time” (MMAH, 2020)..

Restoration – From an ecological perspective, “is the process of assisting the recovery of an ecosystem that has been degraded, damaged, or destroyed” (Society for Ecological Restoration website).

Savannah – A treed community with 11 to 35% cover of coniferous or deciduous trees (Lee et al. 1998).

Satellite Woodlands - Are small treed or forested areas located within 100 m of a larger area of significant woodland. The satellite may be part of a Patch or Patch Cluster.

Setback - A land use planning term, established through the use of zoning standards, generally providing for minimum distances from lot lines to achieve appropriate locations for buildings and structures (MNR, 2010b; Beacon, 2012a). Within the City of London “setbacks shall apply from any lands identified as an ecological buffer” (City of London, 2019).

Significant - As defined by the *Provincial Policy Statement* means:

a) in regard to wetlands, coastal wetlands and areas of natural and scientific interest, an area identified as provincially significant by the Ontario MNR using evaluation procedures established by the Province, as amended from time to time; b) in regard to woodlands, an area which is ecologically important in terms of features such as species composition, age of trees and stand history; functionally important due to its contribution to the broader landscape because of its location, size or due to the amount of forest cover in the planning area; or economically important due to site quality, species composition, or past management history. These are to be identified using criteria established by the Ontario MNR; c) in regard to other features and areas in policy 2.1, ecologically important in terms of features, functions, representation or amount, and contributing to the quality and diversity of an identifiable geographic area or NHS; Criteria for determining significance for the resources identified in sections (c) are recommended by the Province, but municipal approaches that achieve or exceed the same objective may also be used. While some significant resources may already be identified and inventoried by official sources, the significance of others can only be determined after evaluation (MMAH, 2020).

Site Alteration – Activities, such as grading, excavation and the placement of fill that would change the landform and natural vegetative characteristics of a site (MMAH, 2020).

Successional / Seral Age - The stage in a vegetation chronosequence or succession at a given site.

Climax communities - Are self-perpetuating and composed of climax species. A successional stage with unevenly aged and multiple height classes (Strong et al., 1990).

Early successional communities - Have not undergone a series of natural thinning. Dominant plants are essentially growing as independent individuals, rather than as members of a

phytosociological community. It is floristically similar to mid-successional stands, but is juvenile in structural development (Strong *et al.*, 1990).

Mid-Aged - A seral stage of a community that has undergone natural thinning and replacement as a result of species interaction; the community often contains examples of both early successional and late successional species. Mid-successional communities have undergone natural thinning as a result of species interaction, and may show evidence of invasion by climax species, but they are still dominated by seral species. They may include stands with an over mature understorey (Strong *et al.*, 1990).

Mature - A seral stage in which a community is dominated primarily by species that are replacing themselves and are likely to remain an important component of the community if it is not disturbed again. Significant remnants of early seral stages may still be present. **Mature Forests** are dominated primarily by species which are replacing themselves and are likely to remain an important component of the community if it is not disturbed again. Significant remains of early seral stages may still be present (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Older Growth Forests - relatively old and relatively undisturbed by humans. The definition of older growth considers factors other than age, including forest type, forest structure, forest development and the historical and current patterns of human disturbance. Older growth forests are self-perpetuating communities composed primarily of late seral species which show uneven stand age distribution including large old trees without open-grown characteristics (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Pioneer - A community that has invaded disturbed or newly created sites and represents the early stages of either primary or secondary succession. Pioneer communities have invaded disturbed or newly created sites, and represent the early stages of either primary or secondary succession (Strong *et al.*, 1990).

Sub-climax communities - Are successional maturing communities dominated primarily by climax species, but significant remnants of earlier seral stages may be present (Strong *et al.*, 1990).

Young - A seral stage of a plant community that has not yet undergone a series of natural thinning and replacements. Plants are essentially growing as independent individuals rather than as members of a phytosociological community.

Rare Plant Species – List of species that can be grouped but not limited to the following:

Provincially Rare Plants includes species with an element ranking of S1-S3 (For a complete listing of Ontario's rare plant species consult NHIC at www.mnr.gov.on.ca/MNR/nhic/nhic.html).

Regionally Rare Plants - includes species with 1 to 4 stations (records) in Middlesex County (as per the *List of the Vascular Plants of Ontario's Carolinian Zone (Ecoregion 7E)*, Oldham 2017).

Regionally Uncommon Plant - *Native in the Carolinian Zone and (a) listed as common in no more than one Carolinian Zone area; and (b) not rare or historic in more than half of the Carolinian Zone areas (≥6) in which it is native and ranked (i.e. not X (no Status))* (as per the *List of the Vascular Plants of Ontario's Carolinian Zone (Ecoregion 7E)*, Oldham 2017).

Species Richness - The number of different species within a community (Pyron, 2010).

Species-at-Risk - Used to describe species that are listed in one of the conservation categories of “endangered”, “threatened” or “vulnerable”/ “special concern”

Endangered – Any native species that on the basis of the best available scientific evidence, is at risk of extinction or extirpation throughout all or a significant portion of its (Ontario) range; a species threatened with imminent extinction or extirpation (COSEWIC).

Threatened - Any native species that, on the basis of the best available scientific evidence, is at risk of becoming endangered throughout all or a significant portion of its (Ontario) range (COSSARO); a species likely to become endangered if the limiting factors are not reversed (COSEWIC).

Special Concern / Vulnerable - Any native species that, on the basis of the best available scientific evidence, is a species of special concern (in Ontario), but is not a threatened or endangered (COSSARO); a SAR because of low or declining numbers, small range or because of characteristics that make it particularly sensitive to human activities or to natural events (COSEWIC). COSEWIC has replaced the category of “Vulnerable” with “Special Concern”.

Stormwater Management – The plans, public works and initiatives put in place to maintain quality and quantity of stormwater runoff to pre-development levels (City of London, 2019).

Thicket Swamp - A wooded wetland area occurring on organic or mineral substrates with a water table that seasonally drops below the substrate surface; dominated by small trees and shrubs where the tree cover is <10% and the small tree or tall shrub cover (shrubs defined by Soper and Hiemburger 1982) is >25% (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Top-of-Slope - The intersection of the physical top of a bank or valley slope with the table land. This can be different than the geotechnical or engineered stable top-of-slope. For well-defined valleys, the physical boundary is generally defined by the stable or the predicted top-of-slope while “*for a less well-defined valley or stream corridor, the physical boundary may be defined in a number of ways, including the consideration of riparian vegetation, the flooding hazard limit, the meander belt or the highest general level of seasonal inundation*” (MNR 2010b).

Tree Canopy – An almost continuous layer of foliage formed by the crowns of the larger trees. Shades the layers of vegetation below (CVC, 2011).

Treed – A community with tree cover of >10% (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Unevaluated Wetland – Wetlands that have not undergone the OWES evaluation process.

Upland Corridors - *Vegetated areas, or potentially revegetated areas, that provide a link between natural heritage features and areas of the Natural Heritage System. Upland corridors may incorporate infrastructure (such as culverts or underpasses) to support connectivity (The London Plan Policy 1372). Upland corridors support and connect valleylands to natural heritage features and areas where the valleylands do not directly connect. Valleylands are also essential for establishing connectivity for the Natural Heritage System, and they provide corridor and linkage functions between natural heritage features and areas. Both are essential in a highly fragmented or urban landscape (The London Plan Policy 1374). Upland corridors are “to retain or create linkages between isolated natural areas” (The London Plan Policy 1417_g).*

Urban Growth Boundary - The boundary shown on Map 1 and Figure 1, beyond which urban uses will not be permitted. Generally, this map boundary separates the urban parts of our city from the rural parts of our city” (City of London, 2019).

Valleylands - *A natural area that occurs in a valley or other landform depression that has water flowing through or standing for some period of the year (MMAH, 2020).*

Vascular Plants – Have a specialized vascular systems known as the xylem and phloem (Leslie, 2018).

Vegetation Patch – Vegetation patches are usually referred to as such in the City of London before they are assessed and screened to determine if they meet the criteria for one or more of the City’s NHS components, as listed in **The London Plan** Policy 1319. Also, see “Patches”.

Vegetation patches are considered as one unit and can be comprised of one or more “natural heritage features” inside the feature boundary (e.g., woodland, wetland, etc.).

Vernal Pool – Pool fed by either groundwater (e.g., springs), snowmelt, or surface water that may be important breeding sites for [various species], which are generally found within a woodland or in proximity to a woodland (MNRF, 2010b).

Watercourse - Is defined according to several federal and provincial Acts and Regulations and typically consists of a distinct (somewhat to well-defined) channel in which water naturally flows at some time of the year [i.e., permanent, intermittent, or ephemeral flow as defined by MNRF's Stream Permanency Handbook for South-Central Ontario (MNRF, 2013b)]. This includes anthropogenically created / maintained / altered features as well as natural features.

Watershed – *An area that is drained by a river and its tributaries* (City of London, 2019).

Subwatershed - *Area drained by a stream or group of streams within the larger watershed. A subwatershed identifies streams, wetlands, forests, groundwater recharge, and other natural areas* (GRCA, 2020).

Wetland - Lands that are seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as lands where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case the presence of abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the dominance of either hydrophytic plants or water tolerant plants. The four major types of wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. Periodically soaked or wet lands being used for agricultural purposes which no longer exhibit wetland characteristics are not considered to be wetlands for the purposes of this definition (MMAH, 2020).

In the City of London Wetlands are those that are evaluated for significance that do not meet the criteria for designation as a PSW per OWES, as confirmed by the MNRF. Examples of wetlands include:

Bog - Is defined as an open or treed wetland area on deep (>40cm) peat almost entirely composed of Sphagnum species. The tree cover is less than 25%, scattered or clumped, and usually under 10 m in height. The wetland is dominated by graminoids and/or low ericaceous shrubs (Riley, 1994 from Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Fen - Is defined as an open or treed wetland area on deep (>40cm) sedge and woody peat with a substantial component of brown moss. The tree cover is less than 25%, scattered or clumped. The wetland is dominated by graminoids and low non-ericaceous shrubs (Lee *et al.*, 1998). **Fens** may also include seepage marl areas with <40 cm peat, and/or the presence of fen indicator species.

Marsh - Is defined as an open wetland area occurring on organic or mineral substrates with a water table that fluctuates seasonally or periodically at, near, or above the substrate surface; dominated by hydrophytic sedges, grasses, cattails, reeds, forbs or low shrubs with tree and tall shrub cover <25%; may include meadow marsh, shallow marsh, deep marsh or shrub marsh (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Swamp - A mineral-rich wetland community characterized by a cover of coniferous or deciduous trees (Lee *et al.*, 1998).

Wetland Plant Species – Species that are found in wetlands in Ontario. Wetland plant species range from those species that occur primarily in wetlands (“wetland indicators”) to those species that occur in both wetlands and uplands (MNRF, 2014a).

Emergent - Herbaceous plants which rise out of the water (MNRF, 2014a).

Floating - Rooted, vascular hydrophytes with leaves floating horizontally on or just above the water surface (MNRF, 2014a).

Submergent - Rooted hydrophytes with leaves entirely under the water surface (MNRF, 2014a).

Wildlife Habitat - *Areas where plants, animals and other organisms live, and find adequate amounts of food, water, shelter and space needed to sustain their populations. Specific wildlife habitats of concern*

may include areas where species concentrate at a vulnerable point in their annual or life cycle; and areas which are important to migratory or nonmigratory species (MMAH, 2020).

Woodland – A treed community with 35 to 60% cover of coniferous or deciduous trees.” (Lee *et al.*, 1998), 10% tree cover (as described in **Section 3.1.1** in these Environmental Management Guidelines) or 25% shrub cover (as described in **Section 3.1.1** in these Environmental Management Guidelines). In the *Provincial Policy Statement* woodland “means treed areas that provide environmental and economic benefits to both the private landowner and the general public, such as erosion prevention, hydrological and nutrient cycling, provision of clean air and the long-term storage of carbon, provision of wildlife habitat, outdoor recreational opportunities, and the sustainable harvest of a wide range of woodland products. Woodlands include treed areas, woodlots or forested areas and vary in their level of significance at the local, regional and provincial levels” (MMAH, 2020).

DRAFT

9. References

- Alani, A.M., and Lantini, L. (2020). Recent Advances in Tree Root Mapping and Assessment Using non-destructive testing methods: A focus on ground penetrating radar. *Surveys in Geophysics*: 41: 605-646
- Bakowsky, W. (1997). *Southern Ontario Vegetation Communities*. Natural Heritage Information Centre.
- Bakowsky, W., & Riley, J. L. (1993). *A Survey of the Prairies and Savannas of Southern Ontario*. Proceedings of the 13th North American Prairie Conference. Windsor.
- Beacon Environmental. (2009). *Restoration and Securement Strategy for Enhancing the Town of East Gwillimbury Natural Heritage System*. 87 pp. East Gwillimbury, Ontario, Canada: Town of East Gwillimbury.
- Beacon Environmental. (2012, December). *Ecological Buffer Guideline Review*. Markham, Ontario, Canada: Credit Valley Conservation Authority.
- Beacon Environmental. (2014). *London, Ontario, Canada: City of London*.
- Beak Consultants Ltd. (1995). *Aquatic Resources Management Reports for Vision '96 Subwatersheds*. Group 1, Groups 2/3, and Groups 4/5, London.
- Bekessy, S., Wintle, B., Lindenmayer, D., McCarthy, M., Colyvan, M., Burgman, M., & Possingham, H. (2010). The biodiversity bank cannot be a lending bank. *Conservation Letters*, 3, 151-158.
- Bergsma, B. (2004). *City of London Process to Implement Policies and Develop Guidelines to Identify Ecologically Significant Woodlands*. London.
- Bettinger, P., Boston, K., Siry, J.P., & Grebner, D.L.. (2016). *Forest Management and Planning*, Academic Press 2009, second edition December 2016.
- Bibby, C. J., Burgess, N. D., Hill, D. A., & Mustoe, S. H. (2000). *Bird Census Techniques (2nd Ed. ed.)*. Academic Press.
- Birds Canada. (2020). *Birds Canada Webpage*. Canada. Retrieved from <https://www.birdscanada.org/>
- BSC (Bird Studies Canada). (2009a). *Marsh Monitoring Program Participant's Handbook for Surveying Amphibians*. Bird Studies Canada in cooperation with Environment Canada and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- BSC (Bird Studies Canada). (2009b). *Marsh Monitoring Program Participant's Handbook for Surveying Marsh Birds*.
- Boutin, C., & Jobin, B. (1998). Intensity of agricultural practices and effects on adjacent habitats. *Ecological Applications*, 14(6), 1757-1765.
- Bowles, J. (2002). *Regionally Rare Plants of Middlesex County*.
- Bowles, J. M., Draper, W. B., Heagy, A., Kanter, M., & Larson, B. (1994). *City of London Sub-Watershed Studies Life Science Inventories*. London: City of London, Upper Thames River Conservation Authority.
- Bowles, J., & Bergsma, B. (1999). *Components of the Natural Heritage System Guidelines for the Evaluation of Patches*.

- Bowman, I. (1996). *Species at Risk in Ontario - Report of the Rare, Threatened, and Endangered Task Force*. Toronto: Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Bricker, B., & Reader, R. (1999). The effect of woodlot size on woody species composition richness. In G. M. Allen, P. F. Eagles, & S. D. Price, *Conserving Carolinian Canada: Conservation Biology in the Deciduous Forest Region* (pp. 75-87). Waterloo, Ontario, Canada: University of Waterloo Press.
- Brosfokske, K. D., Chen, J. Q., Naiman, R. J., & Franklin, J. F. (1997). Harvesting effects on microclimatic gradients from small streams to uplands in western Washington. *Ecological Applications*, 7, 1188-1200.
- Brown, M. A., Clarkson, B. D., Barton, B. J., & Joshi, C. (2013). Ecological compensation: an evaluation of regulatory compliance in New Zealand. *Impact Assessment and Project Appraisal*, 31(1), 34-44.
- Bull, J. W., Milner-Gulland, E. J., Suttle, K. B., & Singh, N. J. (2014). Comparing biodiversity offset calculation methods with a case study in Uzbekistan. *Biological Conservation*, 178, 2-10.
- Bull, J., & Brownlie, S. (2017). The transition from No Net Loss to a Net Gain of biodiversity is far from trivial. *Oryx*, 51(1), 53-59.
- Burke, D. M., & Nol, E. (1998). Edge and fragment size effects on the vegetation of deciduous forests in Ontario, Canada. *Natural Areas Journal*, 18, 45-53.
- Butler, P., Iverson, L., Thompson III, F. R., Brandt, L., Handler, S., Janowiak, M., . . . Zegre, N. (2015). *Central Appalachians forest ecosystem vulnerability assessment and synthesis: a report from the Central Appalachians Climate Change Response Framework Project*. Newton Square, Pennsylvania, USA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Region.
- Burke, D., and E, Nol (1998). Influence of Food Abundance, Nest-Site Habitat, and Forest Fragmentation of Breeding Ovenbirds
- Cadman, M. D., Dewar, H. J., & Welsh, D. A. (1998). *The Ontario Forest Bird Monitoring Program (1987-1998): Goals, methods and species trends observed*. Canadian Wildlife Service.
- Canadensys. (2020). *Database of Vascular Plants of Canada*.
- Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency. (2016). *Report on Plans and Priorities*. Pp. 36
- Castelle, A. J., & Johnson, A. W. (2000). *Riparian Vegetation Effectiveness*. National Council for Improvement Technical Bulletin No. 799.
- Castelle, A. J., Johnson, A. W., & Conolly, C. (1994). Wetland and stream buffer size requirements - A review. *Journal of Environmental Quality*, 23, 878-882.
- Castelle, A.J., Conolly, C., Emers, M., Metz, E.E., Meyer, S., Witter, M., Mauermann, S., Erickson, T., and Cooke, S.S. (1992). *Wetland Buffers: Use and Effectiveness*. Adolfsen Associates, Inc., Shorelands and Coastal Zone Management Program, Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Pub. No. 92-10.
- Catling, P. (2013). Using Coefficients of Conservatism and the Floristic Quality Index to Assess the Potential for Serious and Irreversible Damage to Plant Communities. *Canadian Field Naturalist*, 127(3), 285-288.
- Chapman, L. J., & Putnam, D. F. (1984). *The Physiography of Southern Ontario*. Special Volume 2(OGS Map P.2715), 3rd. Ontario, Canada: Ontario Geological Survey.
- City of Cambridge. (2018). *Cambridge Official Plan*. Pp. 363
- City of Guelph. (2018). *Envision Guelph - The City of Guelph Official Plan*. Guelph, Ontario, Canada.
- City of Guelph. (2020). *Guidelines for the preparation of Environmental Impact Studies*. Version 2. Pp. 123

- City of Hamilton. (2020). Low Impact Development (LID) – Stormwater Management. Retrieved from: <https://www.hamilton.ca/home-property-and-development/water-sewer/low-impact-development-lid-stormwater-management>
- City of Hamilton and ESAIEG. (2015). Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) Guidelines. Hamilton, Ontario, Canada.
- City of London. (1994). Guide to Plant Selection for Natural Heritage Areas and Buffers. London, Ontario, Canada: Council Approved March 22, 1994.
- City of London. (2004). Guidelines for Determining Setbacks and Ecological Buffers. London, Ontario, Canada: Council Approved April 20, 2004.
- City of London. (2007). City of London's Environmental Management Guidelines. London.
- City of London. (2014). City of London Urban Forest Strategy. London.
- City of London. (2016a). The London Plan. Official Plan, London.
- City of London. (2016b). Tree Protection By-law. London, Ontario.
- City of London. (2017). London Invasive Plant Management Strategy. 47 pp. London, Ontario, Canada.
- City of London. (2018). Tree Planting and Protection Guidelines. In Design Specifications and Requirements Manual (p. 36 pp.). London, Ontario.
- City of London. (2019). Design Specifications and Requirements Manual – 2003, Updated August 2019. London, Ontario: City of London - Environmental and Engineering Services.
- City of London. (2020). Standard Contract Documents for Municipal Construction - 2020 Edition. London, Ontario: City of London - Environmental and Engineering Services.
- City of Waterloo. (2020). City of Waterloo Official Plan. Pp. 444
- Couturier, A. (1999). Conservation Priorities for the Birds of Southern Ontario. Port Rowan: Bird Studies Canada.
- Crins, W. J. (1996). Life Science Gap Analysis for Site District 4E-3. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources.
- de Foresta, H., Somarriba, E., Temu, A., Boulanger, D., Feully, H., & Gauthier, M. (2013). Towards the Assessment of Trees Outside Forests. Resources Assessment Working Paper 183.
- DeWalle, D.R. (2010). Modeling Stream Shade: Riparian Buffer Height and Density as important as buffer width. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. Vol 46, No. 2
- Dobbyn, J. S. (1994). Atlas of the Mammals of Ontario. Don Mills: Federation of Ontario Naturalists.
- Dobson, M. (1995). Arboriculture Research and Information Note: Tree Root Systems. Arboricultural Advisory and Information Service
- Dougan and Associates. (2020). CanPlant. Canada: Evergreen. Retrieved from <https://can-plant.ca/>
- Dreimanis, A., Vagners, U. J., McKenzie, G. D., & Etherington, J. R. (1964a). Pleistocene Geology of the St. Thomas Area (West Half). (Preliminary Geological Map No. 238). St. Thomas, Ontario: Ontario Department of Mines.
- Dreimanis, A., Vagners, U., McKenzie, G. D., & Etherington, J. R. (1964b). Pleistocene Geology of the St. Thomas Area (East Half). (Preliminary Geological Map No. P.606). St. Thomas, Ontario: Ontario Department of Mines.
- Environment and Climate Change Canada. (1994). Migratory Birds Convention Act, 1994 SC. 1994, c.22. Canada.

- Environment and Climate Change Canada. (2005). *Beyond Islands of Green: A Primer for Using Conservation Science to Select and Design Community-based Nature Reserves*. 80 pp. Downsview, Ontario, Canada.
- Environment and Climate Change Canada. (2017). *Annex A: Environment Canada Experience with Conservation Allowances. Operation Framework for Use of Conservation Allowances*. Canada.
- Environment Canada. (2002). *Species at Risk Act, c. 29*.
- Environment Canada. (2012). *Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network Field Manual for Wadeable Streams*. Science and Technology Branch. 51 pp. Dartmouth, NS.
- Environment Canada. (2013). *How Much Habitat is Enough? 3rd*, 127 pp. Toronto.
- Fahrig, L. (2020). Why do several small patches hold more species than few large patches? *Global Ecology and Biogeography*, 29, 615-628.
- Fisheries and Oceans Canada. (1985). *Fisheries Act R.S.C., 1985, c. F-14*. Canada.
- Fisheries and Oceans Canada. (1994). *Habitat Conservation and Protection Guidelines (First ed.)*.
- Fisheries and Oceans Canada. (2007). *Isolated or Dry Open-Cut Stream Crossings*. Fisheries and Oceans Canada Ontario Operational Statement, Version 1.0, 4 pp. Ontario, Canada.
- Fisheries and Oceans Canada. (2019). *Request for Review Form and Guidance*. 11 pp. Canada.
- Fisheries and Oceans Canada. (2020). *Aquatic Species at Risk Map*. Canada. Retrieved from <https://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/species-especes/sara-lep/map-carte/index-eng.html>
- Forest Breeding Bird Survey. (2008). *Forest Bird Monitoring Program - Site Set-Up and Bird Survey Instructions*. Guelph, Ontario: Canadian Wildlife Service.
- Forman, R. T. (1995). *Land Mosaics: The Ecology of Landscapes and Regions*. Island Press.
- Francis, C. M., Austen, M. J., Bowles, J. M., & Draper, W. B. (2000). Assessing Floristic Quality in Southern Ontario Woodlands. *Natural Areas Journal*, 20, 66-77.
- Freemark, K. E., & Collins, B. (1992). *Landscape Ecology of Birds Breeding in Temperate Forest Fragments*. In J. M. Hagan III, & D. W. Johnston, *Ecology and Management of Neotropical Landbirds* (pp. 443-454). Washington, D.C.: Manomet Bird Observatory, Smithsonian Institute Press.
- Fry, G., & Sarlov-Herlin, I. (1997). The ecological and amenity functions of woodland edges in the agricultural landscape: a basis for design and management. *Landscape and Urban Planning*, 37(1-2), 45-55.
- Geomatics International Inc. (1995). *Management Options for Old-Field Sites in Southern Ontario - Guidelines and Literature Review*. 17 pp. Ontario, Canada: Southern Region Science and Technology Transfer Unit.
- Gibbons, P. G., Evans, M., Maron, M., Gordon, A., Le Roux, D., von Hase, A., . . . Possingham, H. (2015). A loss-gain calculator for biodiversity offsets and the circumstances in which No Net Loss is feasible. *Conservation Letters*(Open Access), 1-11.
- Gilman, E. (2003). Branch-to-stem diameter ratio affects strength of attachment. *Journal of Arboriculture*, 29(5), 291-293.
- Government of Ontario. (2014). *Tree Atlas* found at: <https://www.ontario.ca/environment-and-energy/tree-atlas/>
- Grace, J. M., & Zarnoch, S. J. (2013). Influence of forest road buffer zones on sediment transport in the Southern Appalachian Region. In J. Guldin, *Proceedings of the 15th Biennial Southern*

- Silvicultural Research Conference (Vol. 175, pp. 387-493). Asheville, North Carolina, USA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southern Research Station.
- Grand River Conservation Authority (GRCA). (2005). Environmental Impact Study Guidelines and Submission Standards for Wetlands
- Greater Golden Horseshoe Conservation Authorities. (2006). Erosion and Sediment Control Guideline for Urban Construction.
- Gregory, R., Ohlson, D., & Arvai, J. (2006). Deconstructing adaptive management: criteria for applications to environmental management. *Ecological Applications*, 16(6), 2411-2425.
- Guzy, J. C., Halloran, K. M., Homyack, J. A., Thornton-Frost, J. E., & Willson, J. D. (2019). Differential responses of amphibian and reptile assemblages to size of riparian buffers within managed forests. *Ecological Applications*, 29(8), e01995.
- Harris, I. D., & Scheck, J. (1991). From Implications to Applications: The Dispersal Corridor Principle Applied to the Conservation of Biological Diversity. In D. A. Saunders, & R. J. Hobbs, *Nature Conservation 2: The Role of Corridors*. Surrey Beatty & Sons.
- Haspel, C., & Calhoun, R. E. (1991). Ecology and behavior of free-ranging cats in Brooklyn, New York. In L. W. Adams, & D. L. Leedy, *Wildlife Conservation in Metropolitan Environments* (pp. 27-30). Columbia, Maryland, USA: National Institute for Urban Wildlife Symposium.
- Hawkes, V. C., & Gregory, P. T. (2012). Temporal changes in the relative abundance of amphibians relative to riparian buffer width in western Washington, USA. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 274, 67-80.
- Hilditch, T. C. (1993). Use of Woodland Evaluation System in Municipal Planning. In S. Strobl (Ed.), *Significant Woodlands Workshop Proceedings* (pp. 29-34). Leslie M. Frost Natural Resources Centre.
- Hilty, J.A., Worboys, G.L., Keeley, A., Woodley, S., Lausche, B., Locke, H., Carr, M., Pulsford, I., Pittock, J., White, J.W., Theobald, D.M., Levine, J., Reuling, Mo., Watson, J.E.M., Ament, R., & Tabor, G.M. (2020). Guidelines for Conserving Connectivity Through Ecological Networks and Corridors (Issue 30). International Union for the Conservation of Nature (IUCN). <https://portals.iucn.org/library/node/49061>
- Holmes, A. M., Hess, Q. F., Tasker, R. R., & Hanks, A. J. (1991). *The Ontario Butterfly Atlas*. (D. Friesen, Ed.) Altona.
- Houlahan, J.E., and Findlay, S.C. (2003). The effects of adjacent land use on wetland amphibian species richness and community composition. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 60: 1078-1094.
- Hounsell, S. W. (1989). *Methods for Assessing the Sensitivity of Forest Birds and their Habitats to Transmission Line Disturbances*. Toronto: Land Use and Environmental Planning Department, Ontario Hydro.
- International Union for Conservation of Nature. (2016). Biodiversity Offsets. Retrieved from <https://www.iucn.org/theme/business-and-biodiversity/our-work/business-approaches-and-tools/biodiversity-offsets>
- Jalava, J. V., Sorrill, P. J., Henson, J., & Brodri, K. (2000). *The Big Picture Project: Developing a Natural Heritage Vision for Canada's Southernmost Ecological Region*. Peterborough: Natural Heritage Information Centre.
- Jayasuriya, M. T. (2016). *Contrasting functional-based riparian management zones with the fixed-width buffer approach and how it relates to riparian management guidelines*. 156 pp. Syracuse, New York, USA: State University of New York, College of Environmental Science and Forestry.

- Johnson, R. G., & Temple, S. A. (1986). Assessing habitat quality for birds nesting in fragmented tallgrass prairies. In T. M. Verner, M. L. Morrison, & C. J. Rappi, *Wildlife 2000: Modelling Habitat Relationships of Terrestrial Vertebrates*. Madison, Wisconsin, USA: University of Wisconsin Press.
- Jones, C., Palmer, R. M., Motkaluk, S., & Walters, M. (2002). *Watershed Health Monitoring: Emerging Technologies*. CRC Press.
- Jones, C., Somers, K. M., Craig, B., & Reynoldson, T. B. (2007). *Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network Protocol*. Ontario Ministry of Environment.
- Koh, N. S., Hahn, T., & Ituarte-Lima, C. (2014). *A comparative analysis of ecological compensation programs: The effect of program design on the social and ecological outcomes*. Sweden: Uppsala University.
- Kuglerova, L., Agren, A., Jansson, R., & Laudon, H. (2014). Towards optimizing riparian buffer zones: Ecological and biogeochemical implications for forest management. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 334, 74-84.
- Lake Simcoe Region Conservation Authority. (2019). *Ecological Offsetting Policy*. 19 pp. Ontario, Canada.
- Lauenroth, W. K., & Gill, R. (2003). Turnover of root systems. *Root Ecology*, 61-89.
- Lee, H., Bakowsky, W., Riley, J., Bowles, J., Puddister, M., Uhlig, P., & McMurray, S. (1998). *Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario: First Approximation and Its Application*. Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Lee, P., Smyth, C., and Boutin, S. (2004). Quantitative review of riparian buffer width guidelines from Canada and the United States. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 70: 165-180
- Lemieux, Christopher J., Aerin L. Jacob, and Paul A. Gray. 2021. *Implementing Connectivity Conservation in Canada*. Canadian Council on Ecological Areas (CCEA) Occasional Paper No. 22. Canadian Council on Ecological Areas, Wilfrid Laurier University, Waterloo, Ontario, Canada. vi + 216 pp.
- Leslie, H. (2018). Value of ecosystem-based management. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*. Vol 115, No. 14.
- Leuty, T. (1999). *Fact Sheet: Farm Tile Drains and Tree Roots*. Ontario, Canada: Ontario Ministry of Agriculture, Food and Rural Affairs.
- Lind, L., Hasselquist, E. M., & Laudon, H. (2019). Towards ecologically functional riparian zones: A meta-analysis to develop guidelines for protecting ecosystem functions and biodiversity in agricultural landscapes. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 249, 109391.
- Little, C., Cuevas, J. G., Lara, A., Pino, M., & Schoenholtz, S. (2015). Buffer effects of streamside native forests on water provision in watersheds dominated by exotic forest plantations. *Ecohydrology*, 8(7), 1205-1217.
- Macfarlane, D. M., Bredin, I. P., Adams, J. B., Zungu, M. M., Bate, G. C., & Dickens, C. W. (2015). *Preliminary guideline for the determination of buffer zones for rivers, wetlands, and estuaries*. Water Research Commission.
- Magee, D. (1996). *Preliminary List of the Area-Sensitive Breeding Birds*. Unpublished.
- Maron, M., Brownlie, S., Bull, J. W., Evans, M. C., von Hase, A., Quetier, F., . . . Gordon, A. (2018). The many meanings of no net loss in environmental policy. *Nature Sustainability*, 1(1), 19-27.
- Marshall Macklin Monaghan Ltd., Paragon Engineering Ltd., and Aquafor Beech Ltd. (1995). *City of London Subwatershed Studies Implementation Plan*. London.

- Matlack, G. R. (1993). Sociological edge effects: Spatial distribution of human impacts in suburban forest fragments. *Environmental Management*, 17(6), 153-164.
- McLachlan, S. M., & Bazely, D. R. (2003). Outcomes of longterm deciduous forest restoration in southwestern Ontario, Canada. *Biological Conservation*, 113(2), 159-169.
- McLaren, M. A., Konze, K., & Twiss, M. (1998). Wildlife monitoring programs and inventory techniques for Ontario. South Porcupine: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources - Boreal Science Section.
- McWilliam, W., Eagles, P., Seasons, M., & Brown, R. (2012). Evaluation of planning and management approaches for limiting residential encroachment impacts within forest edges: A southern Ontario case study. *Urban Ecosystems*, 15(3), 753-772.
- Milne, R. J., & Bennett, L. P. (2007). Biodiversity and ecological value of conservation lands in agricultural landscapes of southern Ontario, Canada. *Landscape Ecology*, 22, 657-670.
- MECP (Ministry of Environment, Conservation, and Parks). (1990a). Environmental Assessment Act, R.S.O. 1990, c. E.18. Ontario.
- MECP (Ministry of Environment, Conservation, and Parks). (1990b). Ontario Water Resources Act, R.S.O. 1990, c. Ontario.
- MECP (Ministry of Environment, Conservation, and Parks). (2007). Endangered Species Act, 2007, S.O. 2007, c. Ontario.
- MECP (Ministry of Environment, Conservation, and Parks). (2019). Management of Excess Soil - A Guide for Best Management Practices. MMAH (Ministry of Municipal Affairs and Housing). (2017a). The Green Belt Plan, 2017 under the Greenbelt Act, 2005. 98 pp. Ontario, Canada: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MMAH (Ministry of Municipal Affairs and Housing). (2017b). The Oak Ridges Moraine Conservation Plan, 2017 under the Oak Ridges Moraine Conservation Act, 2001. 88 pp. Ontario, Canada: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MMAH (Ministry of Municipal Affairs and Housing). (2020). Provincial Policy Statement, 2020 under the Planning Act. 53 pp. Ontario, Canada: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (1990). Conservation Authorities Act, R.S.O. 1990, c. Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (1997a). Fish and Wildlife Conservation Act, 1997, S.O. 1997, c. 41.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (1997b). Forest Management Guidelines for the Protection of the Physical Environment.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2000a). A Silvicultural Guide to Managing Southern Ontario Forests.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2000b). Significant Wildlife Habitat Technical Guide. Peterborough: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2004). Ontario Tree Marking Guide, Version 1.1. Ont. Min. Nat. Resour. Queen's Printer for Ontario. Toronto. 252 p.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2006). Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act, 2006, S.O. 2006, C. 12 - Bill 11. Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2010a). Forest Management Guide for Conserving Biodiversity at the Stand and Site Scales. Toronto: Queen's Printer for Ontario.

- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2010b). Natural Heritage Reference Manual for Natural Heritage Policies of the Provincial Policy Statement, 2005. Toronto: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry. (2011a). Bats and Bat Habitats: Guidelines for Wind Power Projects. Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2011b). Ontario's Forest Management Guides: An Introduction. 18 pp.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2012). Categorizing and Protecting Habitat under the Endangered Species Act, 2007. 8 pp. Toronto, Ontario: Species at Risk Branch, Policy Division.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2013a). Species at Risk Branch – Best Practices Technical Note. 11 pp. Peterborough, Ontario
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2013b). The Stream Permanency Handbook for South-Central Ontario, 2nd Ed, 30 pp.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2014a). Ontario Wetland Evaluation System Southern Manual Third Edition, Version 3.3. Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2014b). Significant Wildlife Habitat Mitigation Support Tool.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2015a). Significant Wildlife Habitat Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E. Peterborough.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2015b). Survey Protocol for Blanding's Turtle (*Emydoidea blandingii*) in Ontario. Peterborough: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2015c). Survey Protocol for Queensnake (*Regina septemvittata*) in Ontario. Peterborough: Species at Risk Policy Branch.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2016). Survey Protocol for Ontario's Species at Risk Snakes. Peterborough: MNRF Species Conservation Policy Branch.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2017a). A Wetland Conservation Strategy for Ontario 2017-2030. 52 pp. Toronto, Ontario, Canada: Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2017b). Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol - Version 10. (L. Stanfield, Ed.) Ontario, Canada: Fisheries Policy Section.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2017c). Survey Protocol for Species at Risk Bats within Treed Habitats, Little Brown Myotis, Northern Myotis, Tricolored Bat. Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, Guelph District.
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2020). Natural Heritage Information Centre. Ontario, Canada. Retrieved from <https://www.ontario.ca/page/natural-heritage-information-centre>
- MNRF (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry). (2021). Birds and bird habitats: guidelines for windpower projects. Retrieved from <https://www.ontario.ca/page/birds-and-bird-habitats-guidelines-windpower-projects>
- Mitchell, G., & Crook, G. W. (1996). An Ontario Base Map terrain analysis toolbox for resource managers. NODA - Notes, Great Lakes Forestry Centre. Ontario, Canada.
- Moilanen, A., & Kotiaho, J. S. (2018). Fifteen operationally important decisions in the planning of biodiversity offsets. *Biological Conservation*, 227, 112-120.

- Morrison-Saunders, A., & Pope, J. (2013). Conceptualising and managing trade-offs in sustainability assessment. *Environmental Impact Assessment Review*, 38, 54-63.
- Noga, W., & Adamowicz, W. L. (2014). *A Study of Conservation Offset Programs: Lessons Learned from a Review of Programs, Analysis of Stakeholder Perceptions, and Investigation of Transaction Costs*. 65 pp. Ottawa, Ontario, Canada: Sustainable Prosperity.
- North-South Environmental. (2009). *Inventory and Evaluation of Woodlands: City of London*. London: City of London.
- Nottawasaga Valley Conservation Authority. (2019). *Achieving Net Gains through Ecological Offsetting: Guidelines for Preparing a Site-Specific Ecological Offsetting Plan*. Draft for Discussion, 20 pp. Ontario, Canada.
- Olden, A., Selonen, V. A., Lehkonen, E., & Kotiaho, J. S. (2019). The effect of buffer strip width and selective logging on streamside plant communities. *BMC Ecology*, 19(1), 9.
- Oldham, M. J. (1994). *Natural Heritage Resources of Ontario: Mosses*. 23 pp. Peterborough, Ontario: Natural Heritage Information Centre.
- Oldham, M. J. (2003). *Conservation Status of Ontario Amphibians*. Peterborough, ON: Natural Heritage Information Centre. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources.
- Oldham, M. J. (2017). *List of the Vascular Plants of Ontario's Carolinian Zone (Ecoregion 7E)*. 132 pp. Peterborough, Ontario: Carolinian Canada and Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Oldham, M. J., & Brinker, S. R. (2009). *Rare Vascular Plants of Ontario*. Natural Heritage Information Centre.
- Oldham, M. J., & Weller, W. F. (2000). *Ontario Herpetofaunal Atlas*. Ontario, Canada: Natural Heritage Information Centre.
- Oldham, M. J., Bakowsky, W. D., & Sutherland, D. A. (1995). *Floristic Quality Assessment System for Southern Ontario*. Peterborough: Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Oldham, M., Bakowsky, W., & Sutherland, D. (1995). *Floristic Quality Assessment System for Southern Ontario*.
- Ontario American Badger Recovery Team. (2010). *Recover Strategy for the American Badger (Taxidea taxus) in Ontario*. 27 pp. Peterborough, Ontario: Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Ontario Breeding Bird Atlas. (2001). *Ontario Breeding Bird Atlas Guide for Participants*. Guelph, Ontario.
- Ontario Breeding Bird Atlas. (2002). *Ontario Breeding Bird Atlas - Standardized Owl Surveys*. Guelph: Bird Studies Canada, Federation of Ontario Naturalists, Canadian Wildlife Service, Ontario Field Ornithologists, and Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Ontario Breeding Bird Atlas. (2007). *The Atlas of the Breeding Birds of Ontario, 2001-2005*. (M. D. Cadman, D. A. Sutherland, G. G. Beck, D. Lepage, & A. R. Couturier, Eds.) Toronto, Ontario, Canada: Bird Studies Canada, Environment Canada, Ontario Field Ornithologists, Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, and Ontario Nature.
- Ontario Centre for Soil Resource Evaluation. (1993). *Field Manual for Describing Soils in Ontario (4th ed.)*. Ontario, Canada: Publication No. 93-1.
- Ontario Institute of Pedology. (1985). *Field Manual for Describing Soils (Third ed.)*. Guelph: Ontario Institute of Pedology, Guelph Agriculture Centre, and University of Guelph.
- Ontario Nature. (2019). *Ontario Reptile and Amphibian Atlas*. Ontario, Canada: Toronto Entomologists' Association. Retrieved from <https://www.ontarioinsects.org/herp/>
- Ontario Road Ecology Group. (2010). *A Guide to Road Ecology in Ontario*. 72 pp. Scarborough, Ontario

- Ontario (2009). Lake Simcoe Protection Plan
- Quin, A., Cabanettes, A., Andrieu, E., Deconchat, M., Roume, A., Vigan, M., & Larrieu, L. (2015). Comparison of tree microhabitat abundance and diversity in the edges and interior of small temperate woodlands. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 340, 31-39.
- Palone, R. S., & Todd, A. H. (1997). *Chesapeake Bay Riparian Handbook: A Guide for Establishing and Maintaining Riparian Forest Buffers*. Radnor, Pennsylvania, USA: USDA Forest Service.
- Partners in Flight (PIF). (2020). Avian Conservation Assessment Database. Retrieved from Available at <https://www.partnersinflight.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/07/SPECIES-OF-CONT-CONCERN-from-pif-continental-plan-final-spread-2.pdf>
- Poulton, D., & Bell, A. (2017). *Navigating the Swamp: Lessons on Wetland Offsetting for Ontario*. Ontario, Canada.
- Powell, J. S., & Babbitt, K. J. (2016). Buffer-mediated effects of clearcutting on in-pool amphibian productivity: Can aquatic processes compensate for terrestrial habitat disturbance? *Forests*, 8(1), 10.
- Powell, J. S., & Babbitt, K. J. (2015). An experimental test of buffer utility as a technique for pool-breeding amphibians. *PloS one*, 10(7).
- Powell, J. S., & Babbitt, K. J. (2015). Despite buffers, experimental clearcuts impact amphibian body size and biomass. *PloS one*, 10(11).
- Powney, G., Broaders, L., & Oliver, T. (2012). Towards a measure of functional connectivity: Local synchrony matches small scale movements in a woodland edge butterfly. *Landscape Ecology*, 27, 1109-1120.
- Pratt, W.A., and Fox, T.R. (2009). Streamside Management Zones Effectiveness for Protecting Water Quality after Forestland Application of Biosolids. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 38:2106-2120
- Pyron, M. (2010). Characterizing Communities. *Nature Education Knowledge*, 3(10):39.
- Province of Ontario. (2020). *Public Lands Act*, R.S.O. 1990, c.P.43. Ontario.
- Renwick, W.H. (2009). Lakes and Reservoirs of North America in *Encyclopedia of Inland Waters*. 2250 pp. Millbrook, NY, USA.
- Region of Waterloo. (2016). *Region of Waterloo Greenlands Network Implementation Guideline*. Ontario, Canada.
- Richardson, J. S., Naiman, R. J., & Bisson, P. A. (2012). How did fixed-width buffers become standard practice for protecting freshwaters and their riparian areas from forest harvest practices? *Freshwater Science*, 31(1), 232-238.
- Riley, J. L. (1995). *Distribution and Status of the Vascular Plants of the Central Region*. Richmond Hill: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Riley, J. R., & Mohr, P. (1994). *The Natural Heritage of Southern Ontario's Settled Landscapes: a Review of Conservation and Restoration Ecology for Land-Use and Landscape Planning*. Aurora: Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- Sandilands, A. (1997). Memo to London ESA Committee April 9 1997 on Freemark and Collins (1992). London, Ontario.
- Sawatzky, M. E., & Fahrig, L. (2019). Wetland buffers are no substitute for landscape-scale conservation. *Ecosphere*, 10(4), e02661.
- Semlitsch, R. D., & Newbold, J. D. (2003). Biological criteria for buffer zones around wetlands and riparian habitats for amphibians and reptiles. *Conservation Biology*, 17, 1219-1228.

- Simmonds, J. S., Sonter, L. J., Watson, J. E., Bennun, L., Costa, H. M., Dutson, G., . . . Maron, M. (2019). Moving from biodiversity offsets to a target-based approach for ecological compensation. *Conservation Letters*(Open Access), 1-11.
- Smith, P. G., & Theberge, J. B. (1987). Evaluating natural areas using multiple criteria: Theory and practice. *Environmental Management*, 11, 447-460.
- Soil Classification Working Group. (1998). *The Canadian System of Soil Classification* (Third ed.). Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada.
- Solyman, B. (2005). *A Stewardship Guide to Grasslands in Southern Ontario: An Introduction for Farmers and Rural Landowners*. 34 pp. Ontario, Canada: Ontario Barn Owl Recovery Project.
- Strong, W. L., Oswald, E. T., & Downing, D. J. (1990). *The Canadian Vegetation Classification System: First Approximation* (Vol. 25). (Canada Committee on Ecological Land Classification, & National Vegetation Working Group, Eds.) Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.
- Sweeney, B. W., & Newbold, J. D. (2014). Streamside forest buffer width needed to protect stream water quality, habitat, and organisms: A literature review. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 50(3), 560-584.
- Teply, M., McGreer, D., & Ceder, K. (2014). Using simulation models to develop riparian buffer strip prescriptions. *Journal of Forestry*, 112(3), 302-311.
- Terra Geographical Studies Inc. (1994). *Draft Terrestrial Resource Strategy*. Ontario.
- Toronto and Region Conservation Authority. (2018). *Guideline for Determining Ecosystem Compensation*. 46 pp. Ontario, Canada.
- Toronto and Region Conservation Authority (TRCA). (2019). *Erosion and Sediment Control Guide for Urban Construction*. 235pp. Ontario, Canada.
- Toronto Entomologists' Association. (2018). *Ontario Butterfly Atlas*. Ontario, Canada. Retrieved from <https://www.ontarioinsects.org/atlas/>
- Troy, A., & Bagstad, K. (2009). *Estimating Ecosystem Services in Southern Ontario*. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.
- UTRCA (Upper Thames River Conservation Authority). (1997). *Oxford County Terrestrial Ecosystems Study: A Natural Heritage Study for Oxford County*. London.
- UTRCA (Upper Thames River Conservation Authority). (2003). *Middlesex County Natural Heritage Systems Study*. London.
- UTRCA (Upper Thames River Conservation Authority). (2014). *Middlesex Natural Heritage Systems Study: A Study to Identify Natural Heritage Systems in Middlesex County*. London.
- UTRCA (Upper Thames River Conservation Authority). (2017). *Environmental Planning Policy Manual for the Upper Thames River Conservation Authority*.
- Valdes, A., Lenoir, J., De Frenne, P., Andrieu, E., Brunet, J., Chabrierie, O., . . . Decocq, G. (2020). High ecosystem service delivery potential of small woodlands in agricultural landscapes. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, 57(1), 4-16.
- Vanneste, T., Govaert, S., Spicher, F., Brunet, J., Cousins, S. A., Decocq, G., . . . De Frenne, P. (2020). Contrasting microclimates among hedgerows and woodlands across temperate Europe. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, 281, 107818.
- Woodard, S. E., & Rock, C. A. (1995). Control of residential stormwater by natural buffer strips. *Lake and Reservoir Management*, 11(1), 37-45.

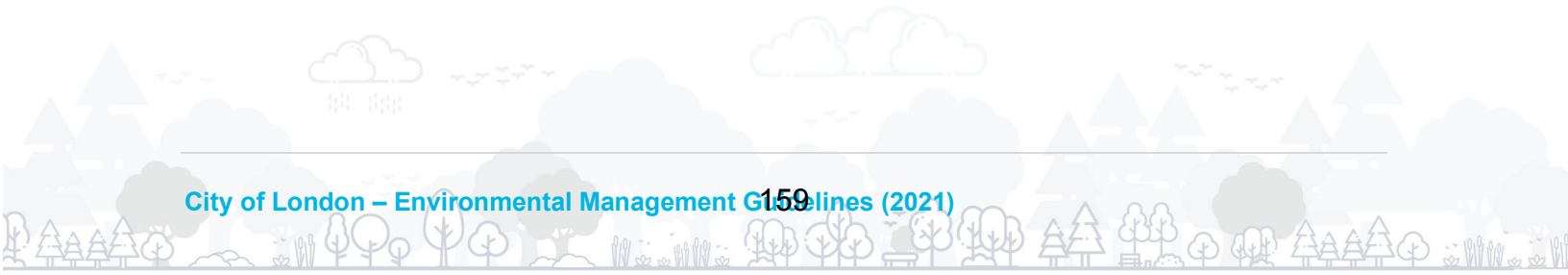
zu Ermgassen, S. O., Baker, J., Griffiths, R. A., Strange, N., Struebig, M. J., & Bull, J. W. (2019). The ecological outcomes of biodiversity offsets under "no net loss" policies: A global review. *Conservation Letters*, 12(6), e12664.

DRAFT

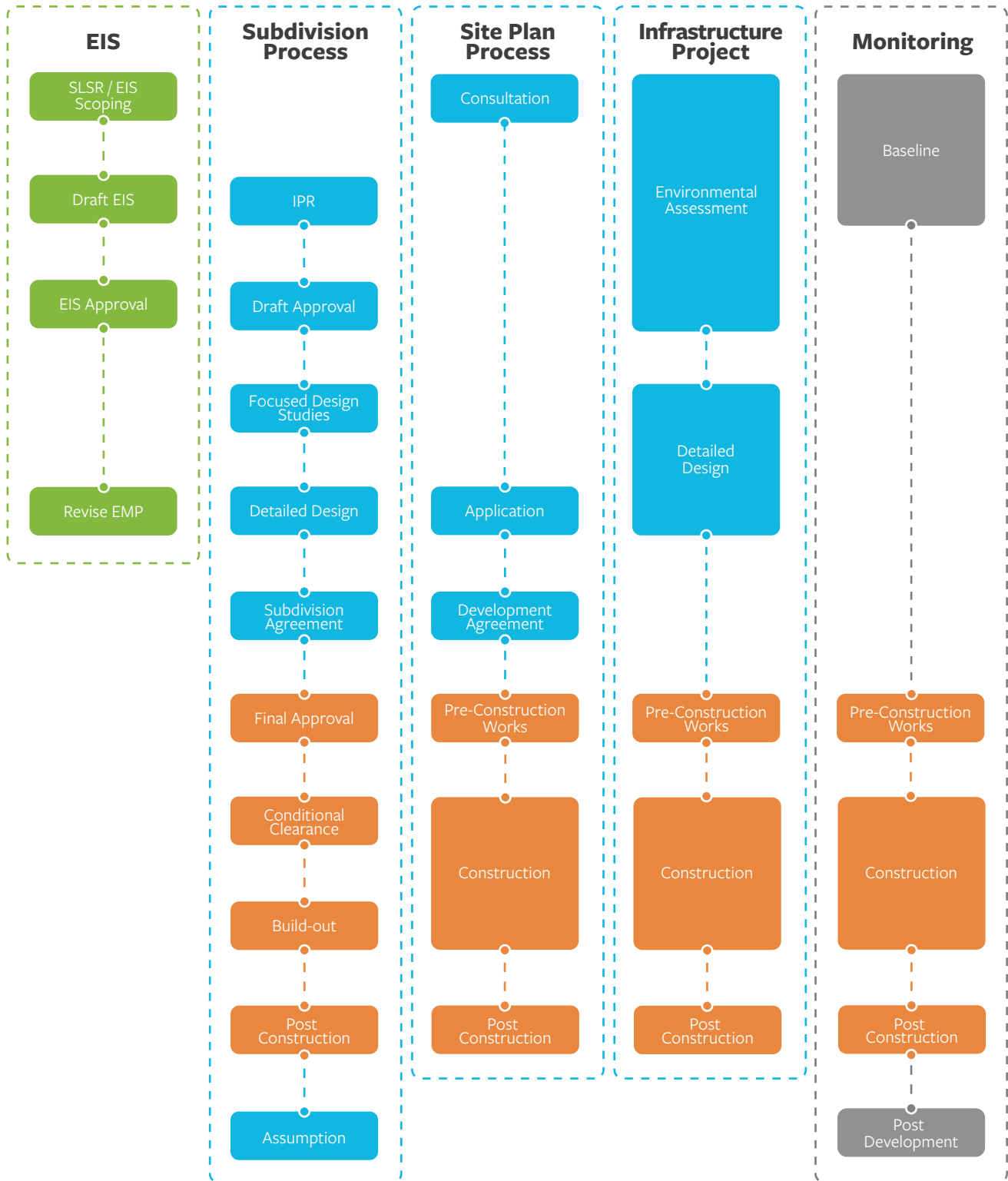
Appendix A

- **EMG Process Flowchart**

DRAFT



Environmental and Development/ Infrastructure Process Timeline



Appendix B

- Environmental Scoping Checklist

DRAFT



APPENDIX B - Environmental Study Scoping Checklist

Application/Project Name: _____
Proponent: _____ Date: _____
Proposed Project Works: _____
Study Type: _____
Lead Consultant: _____
Key Contact: _____
Subconsultants: _____

Technical Review Team:
<input type="checkbox"/> Ecologist Planner: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> MNRF: _____
<input type="checkbox"/> Planner for the File: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> MECP: _____
<input type="checkbox"/> Conservation Authority: _____ Contact: _____
<input type="checkbox"/> EEPAC: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____
<input type="checkbox"/> Project Manager, Environmental Assessment: _____
<input type="checkbox"/> First Nation(s): _____

Study Area:

Location/Address: _____

Study Area Size (approximate ha): _____ Map (attached): _____

Position of Site in Subwatershed: _____

Tributary Fact Sheet: _____

Is the proposed location within the vicinity of the Thames River (<120 m)? Yes No

If Yes, initiate engagement with local First Nation communities. Consultation activity to be provided at Application Review stage.

Policy:

Study must demonstrate how it conforms to the Provincial Policy Statement (2020)

Study must demonstrate how it conforms to *The London Plan* (2016)

Map 1 Place Types:

Green Space Environmental Review

Other Place Types: _____

Map 4 Active Mobility Network:

Pathway placement and future trail accesses shall be considered as part of this study.

Map 5 Natural Heritage System:

(Study Area delineated onto current aerial photographs, including a 5 – 10 km radius of Subject Area)

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Provincially Significant Wetland | Name: _____ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Wetlands | <input type="checkbox"/> Unevaluated Wetlands* |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Area of Natural & Scientific Interest | Name: _____ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Environmentally Significant Area | Name: _____ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Potential ESAs | <input type="checkbox"/> Upland Corridors |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Significant Woodlands | <input type="checkbox"/> Woodlands |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Significant Valleylands | <input type="checkbox"/> Valleylands |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Unevaluated Vegetation Patches | <input type="checkbox"/> Potential Naturalization Areas |

Patch No. _____

** ELC (air photo interpretation and/or previous studies) may identify potential wetlands or other potential features not captured on Map 5.*

Map 6 Hazards and Natural Resources:

Maximum Hazard Line Conservation Authority Regulation Limit (and text based regulatory limit) – Project falls under *Conservation Authority Act* Section 28

Required Field Investigations:

Aquatic:

- Aquatic Habitat Assessment: _____
- Fish Community (Collection): _____
- Spawning Surveys: _____
- Benthic Invertebrate Survey: _____
- Mussels: _____
- Other: _____

Wetlands:

- Wetland Delineation: _____
- Wetland Evaluation (OWES): _____
- Other: _____

Terrestrial (Wetland, Upland and Lowland):

- Vegetation Communities (ELC): _____
- Botanical Inventories Winter Spring Summer Fall

- Breeding Bird Surveys (type & frequency): _____
- Raptor Surveys: _____ Shoreline Birds: _____
- Crepuscular Surveys: _____ Grassland Surveys: _____
- Amphibian Surveys (type & frequency): _____
- Reptile Surveys:
 - Turtle (type & frequency): _____
 - Snake (type & frequency): _____
 - Other (type & frequency): _____
- Bat Habitat, Cavity & Acoustic Surveys: _____
- Mammal Surveys: _____
 - Winter Wildlife Surveys: _____
- Butterflies (Lepidoptera): _____
- Dragonflies / Damselflies (Odonata): _____
- Species at Risk Specific Surveys: _____
- Species of Conservation Concern Surveys: _____
- Significant Wildlife Habitat Surveys: _____
- Other field investigations: _____

Supporting Concurrent Studies/Investigations:

- Hydrogeological/Groundwater: _____
- Surface Water/Hydrology: _____
- Water Balance: _____
- Fluvial Geomorphological: _____
- Geotechnical: _____
- Tree Inventory: _____
- Other: _____

Evaluation of Significance:

Federal:

- Fish Habitat Other Federal: _____
- Species at Risk (SARA)

Provincial:

- Provincially Significant Wetlands Significant Woodlands
- Significant Valleylands Significant Wildlife Habitat Ecoregion 7E
- Areas of Natural & Scientific Interest Fish Habitat

- Water Resource Systems
- Species at Risk (*ESA*): _____

Municipal/London:

- Environmentally Significant Areas (ESAs), Potential ESAs
- Significant Woodlands, Woodlands
- Significant Valleylands, Valleylands
- Wetlands, Unevaluated Wetlands
- Significant Wildlife Habitat
- Unevaluated Vegetation Patches
- Other Vegetation Patches >0.5 ha
- Potential Naturalization Area
- Other: _____

Impact Assessment:

- Impact Assessment Required
- Net Effects Table Required

Environmental Management Recommendations:

- Environmental Management Plan: _____
- Specifications & Conditions of Approval: _____
- Other: _____

Environmental Monitoring:

- Baseline Monitoring: _____
- Construction Monitoring: _____
- Post-Construction Monitoring: _____

Additional Requirements and Notes:

A large rectangular box containing approximately 40 horizontal lines for text entry.

Appendix C

- **Data Collection Standards**

DRAFT



APPENDIX C – Data Collection Standards

Understanding the features and functions of natural areas is considered central to the assessment of significance and to the evaluation of potential impacts of development and recommendations of environmental management strategies. The following sections provide insight into the methodologies and standards required for data collection for informing Environmental Studies within the City of London.

Background

The identification and evaluation of natural features and ecological functions form the basis for assessing the effects of a proposed development on an area and its adjacent lands. It is critical to obtain sufficient, accurate information on the existing conditions of natural heritage features and their functions to ensure an informed impact assessment for a proposed development or infrastructure project (MNRF, 2010a). Inventory protocols (as outlined below) provide a standard for effectively evaluating the existing abiotic and biotic elements of natural heritage features and provide strong field data to inform impact assessment, mitigation, and monitoring for proposed development or infrastructure projects. It may be necessary to use multiple assessment methodologies to capture all data (e.g., Marsh Monitoring auditory surveys and SWH visual assessment).

Further, the intention of Data Collection Standards is to ensure that all new information collected for various studies, including EIS, uses a similar approach and format so that it may be entered into regional databases and compared with existing information. The size of the study area should not affect the ability to make comparative evaluations. Watershed and sub-watershed studies establish a robust baseline of information from which comparative evaluations can be made.

For some natural heritage features and areas, the level of effort required to determine significance may be made at a landscape level (e.g., Significant Woodlands), without conducting a detailed site inventory. However, it is important to collect all levels of information required at the landscape, community, and species levels to address the potential for impacts. The specific elements required for the natural heritage inventory and analysis component of an EIS will vary depending on the size, type, location of the development, and the natural feature that may experience negative impacts. Important elements of study for any given EIS will be selected from a detailed list, however not all elements will need to be included in every EIS (refer to **Section 2.6**).

Guidelines for Data Collection

An Environmental Study must be based on data that is considered current and collected using established protocols and standards, including data collected by the proponent as it informs the analysis, recommendations, and conclusions that are provided within the EIS. Field data reflects the site conditions at the time of collection, however over time conditions on site can change due to a variety of reasons (e.g., vegetation growth, disturbances, and shifts in vegetation community composition). These changes in conditions can affect the accuracy and applicability of the field data. The “shelf life” of field data can vary depending on the type of data, the site, or the surrounding conditions.

Where relatively current data (up to 5 years) is available for the site and it meets the City of London’s Data Collection Standards (outlined in this document), it may be applied to meet some of the requirements for three- or five-season inventory (as determined through consultation with the City of London). However, a minimum of two wildlife/ecological site visits will still be required to verify and document current/existing conditions. The timing of the site visits will be made to supplement information gaps, confirm significant, rare and sensitive features, delineate ecological boundaries, and to identify site specific impact, mitigation, and management requirements. Where there is older inventory information available (5 to 10 years) it must be confirmed through current inventory studies. The existing data

(assuming it meets the City of London's Data Collection Standards) may be used to supplement current field studies and provide historical context and population, species, vegetation trends, and changes over time. The use of these data to supplement or replace the need for more current inventory will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis in consultation with the City of London.

It is recommended that reputable citizen science data sources, such as iNaturalist and the Ontario Reptile & Amphibian Atlas, be reviewed when conducting a background review to supplement data obtained by the consultant team.

Inventory Protocols

Multi-season inventories must be conducted during optimal sampling conditions and with sufficient sampling effort, such that data is of sufficient quality to assess the presence and significance of natural heritage features and functions. Optimal sampling conditions and the necessary sampling effort differ among taxa and should be determined based on species-specific protocol recommendations and/or estimates of detection probability. Sampling design will be determined during pre-consultation using the protocols included in these guidelines. Typical timeframes, in accordance with seasonal timing windows, for various, inventory types include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. **Early Spring (late March/early April)**
 - Amphibians
2. **Spring (late April – May)**
 - Amphibians, Reptiles, Vascular Plants, Vegetation Communities, Breeding Birds (May)
3. **Early Summer (June)**
 - Amphibians, Breeding Birds, Mammals (including Bat acoustic surveys), Vascular Plants, Vegetation Communities, Aquatic Communities and Habitat, Butterfly and Insect Monitoring
4. **Summer (early July/early August)**
 - Vegetation Communities, Significant Wildlife Habitat, Vascular Plants, Butterflies and Insects
5. **Fall (September-October)**
 - Migratory Birds Vascular Plants, Vegetation Communities Reptiles, Mammals, Butterflies and Insects
6. **Winter (November-February)**
 - Bat Leaf off surveys, Winter wildlife surveys

An outline of the comprehensive inventory protocols for species occurring in the study area and adjacent lands must be conducted by qualified professionals in the appropriate seasons as described below. When applicable, MECP species-specific protocols should be used to document SAR. New and emerging techniques not listed below may be considered and/or required as determined in consultation with the City of London and other applicable agencies to ensure robust and accurate inventory results.

1. **Vegetation Communities** A survey of vegetation community types should be undertaken during the main growing season, preferably over three different seasons, spring, summer and fall (generally during the period late May to early September). Community description should follow the Ecological Land Classification (ELC) for southern Ontario (Lee *et al.*, 1998) to Vegetation Community Type, or contain an equivalent or greater level of structural and floristic detail. The report should present both a description of the communities and vegetation maps superimposed on an air photo or a base map of scale 1:5 000 that shows contours and water courses.

For each community type the following technical information should be included:

- A full list of vascular plant species present and an indication of their abundance.
- An assessment of soil type(s), drainage regime and moisture regime.
- An identification of the ELC Class, Series, Ecosite, Vegetation Type (Lee *et al.*, 1998).
- The element ranking for each ELC Vegetation Type (Bakowsky, 1997).
- An annotated assessment of community condition through the calculation of the Floristic Quality Index (Oldham *et al.*, 1995) or another current, equivalent community assessment method including the number of native species, number of non-native species, number of conservative species (conservatism coefficient ≥ 7), mean conservatism coefficient of native species, and sum of weediness scores.
- A summary of tree species, with age and/or size class distribution, including basal area by size class.
- Other indications of community condition including amount of decayed coarse woody debris.

2. **Vascular Plants**

- A survey of vascular plants should be carried out during April-May for spring ephemerals, June-August to capture summer flowering periods and September-October to capture fall flower periods. Surveys should have regard to weather variability in a given year.
- Locations of globally, nationally, provincially and regionally rare vascular plant species should be mapped, and the extent of habitat for each species outlined. Recommendations should be made for additional protection of rare species.
- Nationally rare species as listed in the NHIC website; species with a global rank (G-rank) for G1 to G3 (Oldham and Brinker, 2009; NHIC website), or with a COSEWIC status of Endangered, Threatened, or Special Concern.
- Provincially rare species are those listed with a sub-national rank (S-rank) of S1 to S3 (NHIC website) and MNRF SAR in Ontario (Bowman, 1996) and COSSARO.
- Regional rarity status should be assessed using Oldham and Brinker (2009), Oldham (2017), or from the best available information.

3. **Breeding birds** – Breeding and migratory bird surveys should be conducted as follows:

- Main breeding season surveys as outlined by Cadman *et al.* (1998): a minimum of two surveys, at least a ten days apart, between May 24-July 10. The first survey should take place May 24 – June 17, and the second June 15 – July 10.
 - Surveys to occur 5:00 to 10:00 a.m. for breeding bird survey (Cadman *et al.*, 1998)
 - Time of day and weather conditions consistent with the Ontario Breeding Bird Atlas participant's guide (OBBA, 2001).
 - Line transects, point counts or a combination of both are acceptable so long as all areas receive coverage. (See Bibby *et al.*, 2000 for bird census techniques).
- Where habitat is suitable, dusk and night visits to survey for crepuscular species (e.g., American Woodcock, Common Nighthawk) in accordance with standardized protocols as outlined in OBBA (2001).
- Nocturnal owl surveys usually consist of two surveys in the spring and should be conducted in accordance with the OBBA Standardized Owl Survey Protocol (OBBA, 2002).
- Where suitable, marsh breeding bird surveys should be conducted in accordance with Marsh Breeding Bird Program standard survey techniques (BSC, 2009b).

- Where candidate Raptor Wintering Areas are identified, winter raptor surveys should be conducted to confirm SWH in accordance with the Bird and Bird Habitats: Guidelines for Windpower Projects (MNRF, 2015a; MNRF, 2021).
- Field data (such as breeding evidence, behaviours, SAR occurrences) should be collected and documented in accordance with standard protocols as above, included in mapping (i.e., aerial photography), and following standard terminology (e.g., codes, symbols; OBBA, 2001; Forest Breeding Bird Survey, 2008).

4. Herpetofauna

- Surveys for newts and mole salamanders, where required, should be conducted during seasonal migration (mid March – late April) and may include a combination of minnow traps, visual surveys (e.g., carefully flipping suitable cover, observing vernal pool egg masses), pitfall or funnel traps, or fine mesh dip nets may be required as outlined in McLaren *et al.* (1998). Consultation with local experts and the MNRF is recommended for determining the timing (as surveys are highly weather dependent to capture migration) and specific survey techniques to be used based on location, species, etc.
- Surveys to confirm presence of lungless salamanders should take place in spring or fall as outlined in the Joint EMAN / Parks Canada National Monitoring Protocol for Plethodontid Salamanders (Zorn *et al.*, 2004).
- Anuran surveys consist of documenting calls and should be conducted in accordance with the standardized Bird Studies Canada’s Marsh Monitoring Program protocol for amphibians (BSC, 2009a). Surveys should be conducted as close to suitable breeding sites as possible (and preferably directly adjacent) and surveyors should record direction, distance, and call codes (BSC, 2009a).
- Observational surveys are required during the spring (between March-June) when amphibians are concentrated around suitable breeding habitat in wetlands and woodlands. (MNRF, 2000b)
- Turtle surveys may consist of nesting surveys (late May – early July) in suitable nesting habitat or along gravel shoulders of roads, as well as visual encounter surveys to detect basking turtles following Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry protocol for Blanding’s Turtle (MNRF, 2015b).
- Snake surveys may consist of the following techniques, as required:
 - Visual Encounter Surveys searches between late April and late June (Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry Survey Protocol for Species at Risk Snakes; MNRF, 2016).
 - Hibernacula searches may be required and consist of visual encounter surveys to detect basking snakes during the first sunny, warm days in early spring.
 - Cover board surveys may be conducted where appropriate.
 - Wildlife Scientific Collector’s Authorization (under the *Fish and Wildlife Conservation Act*), along with an associated Animal Care Protocol approved by the MNRF Wildlife Care Committee, and may be required for any surveys that require handling of snakes.
 - Queensnake (*Regina septemvittata*) surveys along the Thames River may be required and should be conducted in accordance with the standard Survey Protocol for Queensnake in Ontario (MNRF, 2015c).
- Resources for identification of herpetofauna egg and larval stages should be utilized (e.g., <http://www.torontozoo.com/adoptapond/resources>)

5. Mammals

- Bats, SAR Bats, and Bat Habitat (SWH): Criteria from the Significant Wildlife Habitat Technical Guide (2000) should be considered to determine bat related SWH. Further, the Survey Protocol for Species at Risk Bats within Treed Habitats (MNRF, 2017b) and Bat and Bat Habitats: Guideline for Wind Power Projects (MNRF, 2011b) documents provide additional information for surveying for bats and associated habitat.
 - Surveys may include bat cavity assessments, exit surveys to confirm presence, and bat acoustic monitoring to determine species composition, etc.
 - Correspondence with MNRF, MECP, and the City of London may be required to determine the design and amount of surveys required.
- Other mammals (e.g., deer, badgers, moles): Surveys may be required for other mammal-related SWH or SAR mammals with appropriate methodologies determined in consultation with the MNRF, MECP, and/or the City of London.
- Incidental mammal observations, including scat and tracks, should be recorded and included within reports. Identification resources are useful for determining mammal species present within a study area.
 - Mammal identification and Tracking Guide: <https://www.forestsontario.ca/wp-content/uploads/2016/04/Mammal-Identification-and-Tracking-Guide.pdf>

6. Non-target wildlife

All species incidentally observed or detected during fieldwork (e.g., Lepidoptera, Odonata, mammals, birds, herpetofauna) should be identified, recorded and integrated into report findings. As much information about the incidental wildlife should be recorded as possible including, but not limited to, species, age, photographic evidence, location, habitat, and behaviour. Incidental observations can provide insight into the environmental conditions of the site and potential SWH.

7. Aquatic communities and habitats survey:

A survey of aquatic communities and habitats should be completed at the most appropriate times for sampling various species over the course of a year and should be completed to supplement data obtained during the background review, if necessary. The scope (i.e., level of detail) and need should be determined based on agency requirements and presence of current (i.e., within the last five years) data appropriate for the particular level of study. Technical data requirements will be determined in consultation with the City of London and may include, but is not limited to the following:

Fish Community Inventory

- Fish community inventories might not be necessary if current, appropriate data are available and obtained through consultation with DFO, MNRF, MECP, CA or the City of London.
- In the event that fish community inventories are required, they should be scoped with the appropriate regulatory agency (e.g., DFO, MNRF, MECP, CA, or The City of London) based on project requirements
- Assuming fish community inventories are required, presence / absence surveys should be conducted using sampling gear appropriate to the water features, time of year, and (if appropriate) species / type of fish targeted (e.g., seine, minnow traps and electrofishing)
- Dependent upon project / agency requirements, detailed data and analysis might be required, and would be identified through consultation with the appropriate regulatory agency. Data gathering and analysis might consist of the following:
 - Index of Biotic Integrity (IBI; Steedman, 1988)
 - Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol (MNRF, 2017c)

Benthic Survey

- Often a component of detailed water quality assessments associated with specific project types such as assimilative capacity studies
- Typically includes qualitative and quantitative sampling of benthic macroinvertebrates
- Scope and specific data analysis tools should be determined on a project specific basis with appropriate regulatory agencies
- For example: Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network Protocol Manual (Jones *et al.*, 2007), Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network (Environment Canada, 2012).

Habitat Assessment and Stream Analysis

- Target Habitat Suitability Index (I) are habitat models developed for specific target species.
- Water chemistry (e.g., dissolved oxygen, temperature, pH, conductivity)
- Watercourse morphology (e.g., bankfull width, depth, stream order)
- Substrate composition
- Riparian (i.e., within 30 m of the bank or as per mandated project-specific protocol) and in-water cover
- Surrounding land uses (i.e., beyond the immediate riparian area)

8. Significant Wildlife Habitat (SWH):

- All potential SWH criteria should be surveyed using current accepted methodologies;
- SWH surveys should be consistent with the current Significant Wildlife Habitat Technical Guide (MNR, 2000b), Significant Wildlife Habitat Mitigation Support Tool (MNR, 2014b), and the most current Ministry SWH Criteria Schedules for Ecoregion 7E (MNR, 2015a);
- SWH surveys should be consistent with additional considerations outlined in ***The London Plan – Policy 1352 - 1355***; and,

9. Regionally Rare Species

Documentation of regionally rare species should include presence absence, population size, habitat, and any other pertinent information (e.g., nesting areas, dens, etc.) and be included in mapping as appropriate population size, condition, and the significance of the site for all regionally rare species. Regional status for Middlesex County should be assessed based on the best available information including, but not limited to:

- Mammals (Dobbyn, 1994)
- Breeding birds (OBBA, 2007; current atlas updates; Partners in Flight, 2020)
- Butterflies (Holmes *et al.*, 1991; Toronto Entomologists' Association, 2018)
- Damselflies and Dragonflies
- Herpetofauna (Oldham and Weller, 2000; Oldham, 2003; Ontario Nature, 2019)
- Vegetation (Oldham, 2017)

10. Species at Risk

If potential suitable habitat for SAR (as listed in *O. Reg. 230/08: SPECIES AT RISK IN ONTARIO LIST*) is encountered and is not covered in the above inventory protocols, MECP species-specific protocols (<https://www.ontario.ca/page/species-risk-guides-and-resources>) should be used in consultation with the MECP and the City of London (through scoping). Targeted surveys may be required, as determined

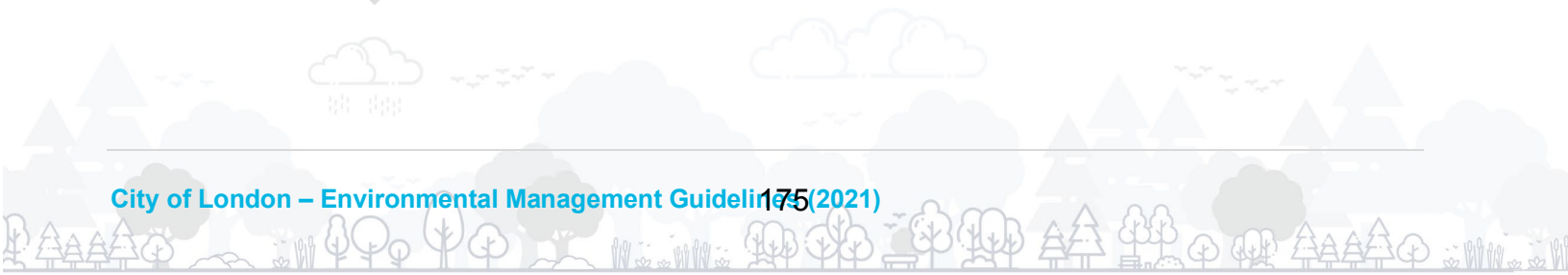
through the scoping process in consultation with the City of London and the MECP, based on the presence of suitable habitat, confirmed sightings, along with the potential impacts associated with a given development or infrastructure project.

DRAFT

Appendix D

- **Woodland Evaluation Form**

DRAFT



Appendix E

- Net Effects Table Template

DRAFT

APPENDIX E - Net Effects Table Template

Examples of direct and indirect impacts are italicized. These are only examples and do not provide the full extent of potential impacts. Each project will require consideration of project and site-specific potential impacts.

- Effects are defined as:
 - **No Net Effect** – Indicates no measurable impact to the identified ecological features or associated functions.
 - **(-) Low Net Effect** – Indicates loss of habitat possessing limited potential habitat value, and/or loss of a portion of habitat, which will not result in long-term impact to the remaining habitat and/or reduction in associated key ecological functions.
 - **(-) Medium Net Effects** – Indicates loss of habitat possessing moderate potential habitat value, and/or loss of a portion of habitat that may result in long-term impacts to the remaining habitat, and/or loss of associated key ecological functions.
 - **(-) High Net Effects** – Indicates loss of habitat possessing significant potential habitat value, and/or loss of a portion of habitat that may result in long-term and potentially critical impacts to the remaining habitat, and/or significant loss of associated key ecological functions.
 - **(+) Net Positive Effects** – indicates a measurable benefit to the habitat/ecological feature

SOURCE OF IMPACT	POTENTIAL AREAS AFFECTED & POTENTIAL EFFECTS	AVOIDANCE, MITIGATION, COMPENSATION	NET EFFECTS & RATIONALE
1.0 Existing Impacts:			
<i>1.1 Loss of gravel from the roadway shoulder</i>	<i>Cultural meadow (CUM) – Increased surface water runoff to the cultural meadow causing flooding, thus, reducing the viability of the habitat for various species using the habitat.</i>	<i>Regrade the roadway shoulder replace gravel and enhance with hydroseeding of a native seed mix to stabilize edge and encourage infiltration.</i>	<i>(+) NET POSITIVE EFFECT Regrading the roadway shoulder will reduce surface runoff and promote infiltration and minimize flooding into the cultural meadow.</i>
<i>1.2 Invasive weed (buckthorn) growth in forest understorey –</i>	<i>Deciduous forest (FOD) - Reduced plant species diversity due to competition from invasive weeds</i>	<i>Prepare and implement an Invasive Weed Management Plan to selectively remove buckthorn</i>	<i>(+) NET POSITIVE EFFECT Removal of invasive plants allows for native plants to colonize and increase diversity</i>
<i>1.3 ...</i>			
2.0 Direct Impacts:			

SOURCE OF IMPACT	POTENTIAL AREAS AFFECTED & POTENTIAL EFFECTS	AVOIDANCE, MITIGATION, COMPENSATION	NET EFFECTS & RATIONALE
Planning & Engineering Design			
2.1 Housing development lots encroaching on forest community	Deciduous forest (FOD) - Removal of native vegetation within a small portion of deciduous forest along edge of the study area resulting in loss of habitat for forest birds and other wildlife.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Re-design development plan to avoid loss of forest; and establish a buffer with native plantings 2) Compensate for loss of forest habitat by filling in bays and other areas adjacent to the forest, increasing core habitat; and establish a buffer with native plantings. 3) Proposed rear lot fencing to include no gates. 	<p>1) (+) NET POSITIVE EFFECT The planting of native plant species within the buffer will provide additional wildlife habitat</p> <p>2) <u>NO NET EFFECT, OR (+) NET POSITIVE EFFECT</u> Compensation may only provide equal habitat or it may provide a net environmental benefit.</p>
2.2 Widening of an existing roadway (additional lanes & services)	Cultural meadow (CUM) – Loss of breeding and foraging habitat for Bobolink	Consult with MECP to determine permitting requirements. Identify and secure additional lands to provide for compensation of habitat loss. Plant compensation areas with native meadow seed mix. Develop plan for long-term management.	<p>(+) NET POSITIVE EFFECT The planting of native plant species within the buffer will provide additional wildlife habitat</p>
2.3 ...			
Construction			
2.4 Construction vehicle traffic	Wildlife from adjacent wetland, meadow marsh (MAM) and open aquatic (OAO) habitat – Injury or mortality to wildlife	Avoid injury and mortality by preparing and implementing a Wildlife Handling Protocol, providing wildlife posters for construction trailer, and training construction crews.	<p><u>NO NET EFFECT</u> Potential impacts to wildlife can be avoided with appropriate protocols and training.</p>
2.5 ...			
3.0 Indirect Impacts:			
Planning & Engineering Design			
3.1 Development plan increase in impervious	Moist deciduous forest (FOD) and skunk cabbage population –	Re-design development plan to reduce impervious surfaces.	<p><u>NO NET EFFECT</u> Potential impacts to groundwater dependent plant populations (i.e. skunk</p>

SOURCE OF IMPACT	POTENTIAL AREAS AFFECTED & POTENTIAL EFFECTS	AVOIDANCE, MITIGATION, COMPENSATION	NET EFFECTS & RATIONALE
<i>surfaces; Stormwater management system</i>	<i>Reduction in groundwater discharge due to loss of infiltration. Die-back and reduction of groundwater dependent skunk cabbage population.</i>	<i>Provide greater infiltration through use of best management practises, infiltration trenches, etc.</i>	<i>cabbage) can be mitigated through the use of appropriate stormwater management measures.</i>
3.2 ...			
Construction			
3.3 Construction related runoff	<i>Adjacent watercourse and swamp thicket (SWT) – Sedimentation in watercourse covering spawning habitat and or fish eggs. Habitat loss and/or reduction of fish population.</i>	<i>Installation of sediment control fencing. Regular monitoring of fencing and other protection measures.</i>	<u>NO NET EFFECT</u> <i>Proper installation of sediment control fencing can prevent deposition of fill and sedimentation. No changes to site drainage.</i>
3.4 ...			

Appendix D: Woodland Evaluation Criteria

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 1.

The woodland contains natural features and ecological functions that are important to the environmental quality and integrity of the NHS. These include site protection (hydrology and erosion/slope) and landscape integrity (richness, connectivity and distribution).

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 2.

The woodland provides important ecological functions and has an age, size, site quality, and diversity of biological communities and associated species that is uncommon for the planning area.

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 4.

The Woodland provides significant habitat for endangered or threatened species.

The London Plan – Criterion 1341 5.



The Woodland contains distinctive, unusual or high-quality natural communities or landforms.







Consistent with **The London Plan** a woodland will be considered significant if it meets either of the following evaluation scores:








- If one or more criteria meet the standard for High; or
- If five or more criteria meet the standard for Medium.








London Plan Criterion					SCORE
Criterion 1.1. – Site Protection	A) Presence of hydrological features within or contiguous with the patch.	HIGH – one (1) or more hydrological features (as described above) located within or contiguous with the patch.	MEDIUM – within 50 m of a hydrological feature.	LOW – no hydrological features present within 50 m of the patch.	
	B) Erosion and Slope Protection	HIGH – patch present on steep slopes >25% of any soil type, OR on a remnant slope associated with other features such as moraines or remnant valley slopes no longer continuous with the river system OR	MEDIUM – patch present on moderate to steep slopes > 10% - 25% with less erodible soils (heavy clay and clay, silty clay)	LOW – Patch present on gentle slopes < 10% with any soil type.	

		on moderate to steep slopes >10% - 25% with erodible soils (silty loam, sandy loam and loam, fine to coarse sands).			
Score for Criterion 1.1 is based on the highest standard achieved between the two measures.					
Criterion 1.2 – Landscape Integrity (Richness, Connectivity and Distribution)	A) Landscape Richness	HIGH – > 10% local vegetation cover	MEDIUM – 10% local vegetation cover	LOW – < 7% local vegetation cover.	
	B) Landscape Connectivity (linkage and distance between patches not separated by permanent cultural barriers).	HIGH – patches directly connected by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. waterways or riparian habitat (generally primary or secondary aquatic corridors and streams with bridges and/or underpasses: for example, Thames, Dingman, Medway, Stoney, Pottersburg, Kettle, Dodd, Sharon, Oxbow, Kelly, Stanton, Mud, Crumlin); ii. Contiguous or semi-contiguous habitat. 	MEDIUM – patches indirectly connected by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. habitat gaps < 40 m; ii. areas identified as Anti-fragmentation, Terrestrial Corridor, Big Picture Corridor (https://caroliniancanada.ca/legacy/ConservationPrograms_BigPictureMaps.html) to enhance the viability of isolated woodlands by re-connection, buffering, expanding OR to infill disturbed areas or replace abandoned fields (Riley & Mohr, 1994); <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. abandoned rails, utility rights-of-way (hydro corridors, water/gas pipeline); b. Open space greenways and golf courses; c. Active agriculture or pasture; d. Watercourses connected by culverts; and, e. First or second order streams that exhibit 	LOW – patches not connected due to the presence of permanent cultural barriers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. major roads and highways with no culverts; ii. urban or industrial development, large parking lots; iii. infrastructure; iv. dams, buried watercourses, channelized or greater than first order watercourses; and, v. active recreational land-uses (campground, parks with major facilities – community centres, arenas). 	

			channelized morphology.		
	C) Patch Distribution (isolation & arrangement of patches / patch clusters).	HIGH – patch clusters with total area > 40 ha OR identified as a Big Picture Meta Core (Carolinian Canada, 2000).	MEDIUM – patch clusters with total area 20 – 40 ha.	LOW – patch clusters with total area < 20 ha.	
Score Criterion 1.2 based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the three standards.					
Criterion 2.1 – Age and Site Quality	A) Community Successional Stage / Seral Age	HIGH – patch contains one (1) or more mature or older growth communities	MEDIUM – patch contains one (1) or more mid-aged communities	LOW – patch contains only pioneer to young communities	
	B) Mean Coefficient of Conservatism (MCC) of communities or whole patch	HIGH – one (1) or more vegetation community with an MCC \geq 4.6; OR MCC of patch > 4.5	MEDIUM – one (1) or more vegetation community with an MCC 4.2 – 4.5; OR MCC of patch \geq 4.0 – 4.5	LOW – all vegetation communities with an MCC < 4.2; OR MCC of patch < 4.0.	
Score Criterion 2.1 based on the highest standard achieved between the two measures.					
Criterion 2.2 – Size and Shape	A) Patch Size	HIGH Patch > 9.0 ha in size OR patch contains a woodland >4 ha.	MEDIUM Patch 2.0 – 9.0 ha in size OR patch contains a woodland 2-4 ha.	LOW Patch < 2.0 ha in size.	
	B) Patch Shape and Presence of Interior	HIGH Patch contains interior habitat that is more than 100 m from the edge OR has a Perimeter: Area ratio <1.5 m/m ² .	MEDIUM Patch contains no interior habitat but has a Perimeter:Area ratio 1.5 – 3.0 m/m ² .	LOW Patch contains no interior and has a Perimeter:Area ratio > 3.0 m/m ²	
	C) Bird Species	HIGH Patch provides breeding habitat for any three (3) or more bird species of conservation concern, including provincially rare bird species (MNRF, 2015a) or species of regional concern (Partners in Flight, 2020).	MEDIUM Patch provides breeding habitat for one (1) or two (2) bird species of conservation concern, including provincially rare bird species (MNRF, 2015a) or species of regional concern (Partners in Flight, 2020).	LOW Patch does not provide breeding habitat any bird species of conservation concern, including provincially rare bird species (MNRF, 2015a) or species of regional concern (Partners in Flight, 2020).	
Score Criterion 2.2 based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the three standards.					

Criterion 2.3 Diversity of Communities, Landforms and Associated Species	A) ELC Community Diversity	HIGH – Patch contains 6 or more ELC Community Series	MEDIUM – Patch contains 3-5 ELC Community Series	LOW – Patch contains 1-2 ELC Community Series	
	B) Community and Topographic Diversity (variation and heterogeneity)	HIGH – Patch contains three (3) or more Ecosites in one (1) Community Series OR four (4) or more Vegetation Types OR three (3) or more topographic features (e.g. tableland, rolling upland, valley slope, terrace, bottomland).	MEDIUM – Patch contains two (2) or more Ecosites in one Community Series OR by three (3) Vegetation Types OR two (2) topographic features, or one (1) Vegetation Type with inclusions or complexes.	LOW – Patch relatively homogenous; one (1) Ecosite OR one (1) to two (2) Vegetation Types on one (1) topographic feature.	
	C) Diversity (species and individuals) and Critical Habitat Components for Amphibians	HIGH – three (3) or more species of amphibians present in the patch, OR one (1) species of amphibian that is abundant in one (1) or more communities; OR two (2) or more critical habitat components present in the patch.	MEDIUM – 1-2 species of amphibians present in the patch; OR one (1) species of amphibian that is occasional* in one (1) or more communities; OR one (1) critical habitat components present in the patch.	LOW – No species of amphibian present in the patch, OR no critical habitat components present in the patch.	
	D) Presence of Conifer Cover	HIGH – Patch contains one or more conifer communities that are > 4.0 ha in size.	MEDIUM – Patch contains one or more conifer communities that are between 2.0 and 4.0 ha in size.	LOW – Patch contains conifer communities < 2.0 ha in size.	
	E) Fish Habitat Quality	HIGH – Dissolved oxygen > 8.0 mg/L OR abundant instream woody debris and rocks and watercourse with a natural channel located within or contiguous with the patch.	MEDIUM – Dissolved oxygen 5.0 – 8.0 mg/L OR moderate amount of instream woody debris and rocks and portions of channelized watercourses within or contiguous with the patch.	LOW – Dissolved oxygen < 5.0 mg/L OR no instream woody debris and sparse structure and entire watercourse channelized within or contiguous with the patch.	
	Score for Criterion 2.3 based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the five standards.				
Criterion 4.1 – Significant habitat for endangered or threatened species.	A) Species At Risk Habitat	SAR habitat present or previously identified: YES or NO			
	The presence of SAR habitat will add one HIGH score to the overall assessment				
	A) ELC Community SRANK	HIGH – One (1) or more communities with an SRANK of S3	MEDIUM – No communities with an	LOW – No communities with an	

Criterion 5.1 – Distinctive, unusual or high-quality communities.		or lower.	SRANK lower than S4.	SRANK lower than S5.	
	B) Significant Wildlife Habitat	SWH habitat present or previously identified: YES or NO			
	The presence of SWH habitat will add one HIGH score to the overall assessment				
	C) Rare Plant Species Presence / Absence	HIGH – 1 Rare Plant (S1-S3) or 4 Regionally Rare plants	MEDIUM – 1-3 Regionally Rare plants	LOW – 1 Regionally Uncommon Plant	
	D) Size and distribution of trees	HIGH – trees > 50 cm dbh abundant in one or more communities within the patch.	MEDIUM – trees > 50 cm dbh rare or occasional in one or more communities within the patch.	LOW – trees > 50 cm dbh not present in any communities within the patch.	
	E) Basal Area	HIGH – Average basal area of trees for any community in the patch ≥ 16m ² /ha for trees >25 cm DBH; OR > 24 m ² /ha for trees > 10 cm DBH; OR all diameter class sizes are represented in the stand (saplings < 10 cm; polewood 10-24 cm; small sawlog 26-36; medium sawlog 38-48 cm; large sawlogs 50-60 cm; x-large or veteran trees > 62 cm.	MEDIUM – Average basal area for any community in the patch 12 – 24 m ² /ha of trees >10 cm DBH; OR missing one of polewood, small, medium, or large size classes.	LOW – Average basal area for all communities in the patch < 12 m ² /ha for trees > 10 cm DBH; OR missing two or more of polewood, small, medium, or large size classes.	
Score for Criterion 5.1 based on the highest standard achieved for any one of the five standards					
Criterion 5.2 – Distinctive, Unusual or High-Quality Landforms	A) Distinctive landform types	HIGH – Patch located on an Earth Science ANSI OR on the Beach Ridge or Sand Plain physiographic landform units.	MEDIUM – Patch located on the Till Plain or Till Moraine physiographic landform unit.	LOW – Patch is located on the Spillway physiographic landform unit.	
	Score for Criterion 5.2 based on the highest standard achieved.				
Woodland Evaluation Score					
Significant Woodlan					

2020 Community Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas Emissions Inventory EEPAC Working Group Comments

Suba Sivakumar, Ian Whiteside, Peter Ferguson, and Ian Arturo

Although the Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Inventory has been finalized by the City, the EEPAC working group has organized its comments into the following categories, which we believe to be helpful: a) questions for the City regarding methodology in 2020 reports or general questions to the City, and b) proposed refinements/methodological changes for future inventory updates.

Questions for the City of London

1. Impact of bicycles - The City notes that bicycle use increased 20% in 2020, due to the COVID-19 pandemic. Are there any estimates of the breakdown in commuting vs. leisure usage? The use of bicycles for commuting which have directly replaced personal vehicles should result in measurable decreases in GHG emissions.
2. Impact of bus ridership - Neither trends in bus ridership over the past several years nor bus ridership in 2020 were discussed in the report. Do increases (or decreases) in bus ridership have a measurable impact on fuel consumption, and therefore GHG emissions? If so, how measurable (e.g. for every 100 people who ride the bus instead of driving their personal vehicle, how many kg of GHG emissions are avoided?).
3. On-road vs off-road gasoline usage - With respect to gasoline use and its impact on GHG emissions, does the city have an estimate of the share of contribution coming from small engines (e.g. gas lawn mowers, gas leaf blowers, etc.)? Small engines typically cause more air pollution than vehicles burning a similar amount of fuel.
4. Landfill methane utilization at W12A landfill - Has the City of London studied generating usable energy from the gas currently flared at the W12A landfill? Landfill gas to electricity would displace some grid-based natural gas generation. Landfill gas converted to pipeline quality natural gas would directly replace fossil fuel based natural gas.
5. Reduction targets - Does the City plan to achieve the Province of Ontario's GHG reduction targets or the more aggressive reduction targets from the Government of Canada?
6. Definition of 'average household' - The document sometimes describes energy use or GHG production on a per capita basis. Frequently, however, it refers to an average house or household without defining what an 'average household' is. The 'average household' probably varies considerably between neighborhoods, due to differing household sizes, lifestyles, and home construction characteristics. Is the 'average household' definition from Statistics Canada, or calculated by the City of London?

Proposed Refinements/Changes for Future Inventory Updates

1. New category: consider adding medical waste incineration - Due to the COVID-19 pandemic, the use of masks, gloves, and other single use items have increased, likely increasing the generation of regulated medical waste as well. Has an increase

2020 Community Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas Emissions Inventory EEPAC Working Group Comments

Suba Sivakumar, Ian Whiteside, Peter Ferguson, and Ian Arturo

in non-biogenic medical waste feedstock been quantified? If so, how much have GHG emissions from medical waste incinerators servicing healthcare facilities within the City of London increased? If the City hasn't considered medical waste in terms of direct emissions, it should consider doing so in future inventories, since both municipal solid waste and sewage sludge direct emissions are considered. Adding additional categories will increase total GHG emissions in the inventory but will also more accurately quantify progress in reducing emissions.

2. New category: consider adding refrigerant emissions - Refrigerants should be factored into the inventory, since they are directly related to energy use within the City of London. Examples of usage include air conditioning systems, refrigerators/freezers and heat pumps - systems which require the transfer of heat between two spaces. An estimated [29% of global GHG emissions from refrigeration systems are from refrigerant emissions](#) (while the other 71% are from direct energy use). Since Ontario's electricity grid is largely decarbonized, this share is likely far higher. While CFCs, which are damaging to the ozone, were replaced by HFCs, HFCs still have very high global warming potential (GWP), often in the thousands. For example, commonly used [R-134a \(tetrafluoroethane\) has a GWP of 1,300](#). While HFCs are being phased out for more climate friendly refrigerants such as R-744 (CO₂), R-1234yf, R-290 (propane), and R-600a (isobutane), HFCs and other high-GWP refrigerants are still widely in use. As older systems which use refrigerants are replaced with newer systems, the GHG emissions from refrigerants in the City of London should be expected to decrease, and a rate of replacement can be calculated based on the service life and replacement rate of various systems which use refrigerants.
3. Closed landfills represent a unique opportunity to address GHG emissions - As per Table 14 of the Inventory, closed landfills contribute 30 kT/yr of GHG emissions vs. 90 kt/yr from the W12A Landfill and 20 kT/yr from IC&I waste disposed outside of London. No methodology is given for calculating closed landfill emissions. There appear to be dozens of closed landfills in London, as per the [London City Map](#), but it is not clear how methane emissions were estimated. Methane emissions from closed landfills are a function of many factors including the amount of putrescible waste disposed of, stage of the landfill, and gas collection and treatment systems in place. This could be a potential area of study (perhaps even a thesis or dissertation) to better understand the extent of methane emissions from a variety of different closed landfills. Such research could be informative at an international level. Additionally, closed landfills with the highest amount of emissions could be targeted for [alternative methane destruction technologies](#).
4. GWPs should be taken from IPCC's Fifth Assessment Report - The IPCC's Fifth Assessment Report (AR5) should be used in place of the AR4 to determine GWPs. [Methane has a GWP of 28 in AR5](#), vs. 25 in AR4, which was used in the documents. Therefore, CO₂eq emissions of methane are likely underestimated.
5. Quantified impact of coal plant closures - London's GHG emission targets seem to be on track based on the chart on page 13. How much reduction in GHG emissions has been due to the closure of coal power plants in Ontario between 2003 (when emissions in London seemed to have peaked), and 2014, when the last coal plant was shut down? I think it would be useful to have this impact quantified as the GHG

**2020 Community Energy Use and Greenhouse Gas Emissions Inventory
EEPAC Working Group Comments**

Suba Sivakumar, Ian Whiteside, Peter Ferguson, and Ian Arturo

benefit from shutting down coal generation was significant but cannot be repeated/
act as a source of reduction going forward.

6. Land use and development and urban design unaddressed - Under the section “Factors that influence how much energy a modern city uses”, Land Use and Development and Urban Design are listed as top two factors. However, these two factors were not addressed in the report.
7. Describe different scopes for ‘average CO₂eq emissions’ - Page 44 of the agenda (p. 17 of the report) mentions the ‘average’ household emits 9.3 tonnes of CO₂eq from burning fuel and waste but earlier (p. 43 agenda, p. 16 report - right column) mentions that total emissions per household is 18 tonnes of CO₂eq. While this appears to be based on considering Scope 1 vs. Scope 1-3 emissions, this is not explicitly mentioned, and can confuse the reader. The different Scopes should be mentioned here.
8. Discussing ‘ton’ in definitions - Consider removing the reference to ‘ton’ and just describe ‘metric tonne’.
9. Discussing ‘terajoules’ in section 2.1 - Because the table in section 2.1 lists percentages and not absolute values, there is no need to mention terajoules in the column headings (or define just yet what a terajoule is).